

Installation Guide | PUBLIC Document Version: 1.10 – 2023-10-18

SAP Identity Management Installation and Update Guide on UNIX

Using Software Provisioning Manager 1.0

THE BEST RUN

Content

1	SAP Identity Management Installation and Update Guide on UNIX4
2	Installing SAP Identity Management
2.1	Installation Checklist
2.2	Planning SAP Identity Management Installation
	Installation Overview
	Installation Options
	Hardware and Software Requirements
	Installation Parameters
	SAP Identity Management System Directories
2.3	Preparing for SAP Identity Management Installation
	Creating Operating System Users and Groups
	Exporting and Mounting Global Directories
	Preparing the Installation Media
2.4	Installing SAP Identity Management
	Prerequisites for Running Software Provisioning Manager
	Running Software Provisioning Manager
	Additional Information About Software Provisioning Manager
	Installing the Identity Management Developer Studio
2.5	Post-Installation Tasks
	Post-Installation Checklist
	Unpacking the Core Component
	Identity Management Database on Oracle
	Identity Management Database on IBM DB2
	Identity Management Database on SAP ASE
	Creating Encryption Keys
	Creating and Configuring Dispatchers
	Using the SAP Java Connector (JCo)
	Defining the JDBC Connection for Identity Management Developer Studio Service
	Configuring the Java System Properties
	Using the HTTP Security (Secure Sockets Layer/SSL)
	Initial Configuration of Identity Management Developer Studio
	Defining the JDBC Connection for the JMX Layer
	Configuring the JMX Layer
	Initial Configuration of Identity Management User Interface
	Defining Customer Specific Themes for Web Dynpro Applications.
	Keyboard Access for User Interface Elements in Web Dynpro

	Integrating Identity Management User Interface in the SAP Enterprise Portal (optional). \ldots .161
	Initial Configuration of Identity Management User Interface for HTML5.
	Starting the Virtual Directory Server
	Initial Configuration of Identity Management Virtual Directory Server.
2.6	Starting and Stopping SAP Identity Management
3	Updating SAP Identity Management
3.1	Updating SAP Identity Management with Software Provisioning Manager 1.0.
3.2	Updating SAP Identity Management Components
	Updating SAP Identity Management Core
	Updating Runtime Components
	Updating Identity Management Developer Studio Service
	Updating Identity Management Developer Studio
	Updating the Virtual Directory Server
	Updating Identity Management User Interface
	Updating the REST Interface Version 2
	Updating the Identity Management User Interface for HTML5
	Updating IDM Connector for UWL
	Downloading and Installing the Federation Software

1 SAP Identity Management Installation and Update Guide on UNIX

This guide describes how to install and update SAP Identity Management 8.0 on UNIX.

2 Installing SAP Identity Management

This section describes how to install SAP Identity Management 8.0.

As of version 8.0 SP04 and higher, you install SAP Identity Management using the Software Provisioning Manager 1.0 installation tool. You can use the Software Provisioning Manager 1.0 tool to install all SAP Identity Management components, except for SAP Identity Management Developer Studio client, SAP Identity Management Logon Help and SAP Identity Management Password Hook. The installation procedure for those three components has not changed, that is, they must be installed manually.

About Software Provisioning Manager

Software Provisioning Manager 1.0 is the successor of the product- and release-specific delivery of provisioning tools, such as SAPinst. Before you run it, we recommend that you always download the latest version of Software Provisioning Manager 1.0. Software Provisioning Manager 1.0 is part of the Software Logistics Toolset 1.0 ("SL Toolset" for short). This way, you automatically get the latest fixes and supported processes. As a result, "SAPinst" has been renamed to "Software Provisioning Manager 1.0" in this documentation. However, the term "SAPinst" is still used in:

- Texts and screen elements in the Software Provisioning Manager GUI
- Naming of executables, for example sapinst.exe

Important SAP Notes

Read the following SAP Notes before you start the installation.

These SAP Notes contain the most recent information about installation, as well as corrections to the installation documentation. Make sure that you have the up-to-date version of each SAP Note, which you can find at http://support.sap.com/notes/

SAP Notes for the Installation

SAP Note Number	Title	Description
2036858	SAP Identity Management 8.0	This note is a central entry point for all information and notes relating to SAP Identity Management 8.0.
2296259	Inst.SAP Identity Management 8.0 SP04 and higher using Software Provi- sioning Manager	This note provides information about installation and update of SAP Identity Management 8.0 SP04 and higher us- ing Software Provisioning Manager.

SAP Note Number	Title	Description
1680045	Release Note for Software Provisioning Manager 1.0	This note provides information about Software Provisioning Manager as well as products and releases supported by it.

Related Information

Installation Overview [page 8] Installation Checklist [page 6]

2.1 Installation Checklist

This section describes how you install SAP Identity Management step by step.

Planning

- Plan your SAP Identity Management system installation according to the Master Guide at http:// help.sap.com/nwidm80 > Installation and Upgrade Information . Familiarize yourself with the following documentation:
 - Software Components of SAP Identity Management
 - Overall Implementation Sequence
 - Installation Overview [page 8]
- 2. Decide whether you want to install your SAP Identity Management system with all instances on one host or with the instances distributed over several hosts. For more information, see Installation Options [page 10]
- 3. Check the hardware and software requirements for each installation host:
 - Requirements on UNIX [page 16]
- 4. Install the database software for SAP Identity Management system. For more information, see Supported Database Systems (Overview) [page 22]
- 5. Install the JDBC driver for the corresponding database. For more information, see Installing the JDBC Drivers [page 26]
- To deploy SAP Identity Management components on SAP NetWeaver AS Java, make sure that an SAP Java system based on SAP NetWeaver 7.3 or higher is available in your system landscape.
 Familiarize yourself with the dependencies between SAP Identity Management deployable components.
 For more information, see Prerequisites and Dependencies Between Deployable Components [page 28]
- 7. Plan and prepare installation parameters before you start the installation. For more information, see Installation Parameters [page 37].

8. Check the requirements for the SAP Identity Management System Directories [page 44].

Preparation

- 1. Do the required preparations for your operating system platform as described in the relevant sections:
 - If you plan to install your SAP Identity Management system distributed over several hosts (distributed system), you
 - export and mount global directories [page 46].
 - Ensure that the required operating system users are created [page 46].
- 2. You prepare the installation media [page 55]

Installation

- 1. You run the installation for the required system variant:
 - Standard System

You run Software Provisioning Manager [page 64] to install an SAP Identity Management system with all components on one host.

- Distributed System
 - 1. You run Software Provisioning Manager [page 64] to install the SAP Identity Management Core Components on the host where you want to have them running.
 - 2. **UNIX:** You make sure that the global directories are available on the hosts where you want to install SAP Identity Management Dispatcher instances and the Virtual Directory Server. For more information, see Exporting and Mounting Global Directories [page 50].
 - 3. You run Software Provisioning Manager [page 64] to install additional SAP Identity Management Dispatcher instances on the hosts where you want to have them running.
 - 4. You run Software Provisioning Manager [page 64] to install the Virtual Directory Server on the host where you want to have it running.
 - 5. You run Software Provisioning Manager [page 64] to deploy additional SAP Identity Management components on SAP NetWeaver AS Java.
- 2. You install the SAP Identity Management Developer Studio client. See Installing the Identity Management Developer Studio [page 77]

Post-Installation

1. You perform post-installation tasks [page 78].

2.2 Planning SAP Identity Management Installation

This section describes the planning phase of SAP Identity Management installation.

Related Information

Hardware and Software Requirements [page 14] Installation Parameters [page 37] SAP Identity Management System Directories [page 44]

2.2.1 Installation Overview

SAP Identity Management 8.0 consists of several components. Some of the components run on SAP NetWeaver AS Java, for example, the Identity Management user interface. Other components are stand-alone and are installed separately.

The software components can be installed on the same server or on several servers, depending on the requirements and purpose of the installation. For a smaller development environment, all components could be installed on the same server. In a production environment, the components are normally divided between several servers prepared for high availability and high performance:

- The database server must be clustered to ensure high availability of the data. For more information, see High Availability
- The servers with SAP NetWeaver AS Java for the Identity Management user interface must be clustered, to ensure high availability. Load balancing is handled by SAP NetWeaver AS Java.
- The servers with the runtime components are duplicated by setting up two or more servers with identical configurations. This will ensure high availability and load sharing of the processing. The runtime components can also be distributed to the servers with SAP NetWeaver AS Java.

i Note

The Identity Management Runtime Components is usually installed on several servers when using the SAP Identity Management. For data discovery purposes, the Identity Management Runtime Components must also be installed on the same server as where the Identity Management Developer Studio service is installed.

Data discovery refers to the ability to configure From/To passes more easily by analyzing the source/target data source. This functionality allows the system to discover source/target system attributes related to the current pass. For example, if you have a FromASCII pass and you are reading a CSV file with 5 columns, choosing Template Data Source Template (on the Destination tab of the pass) will fetch the file, identify the 5 columns and insert them as pass attributes.

To do this, SAP Identity Management relies on the existing connector implementations (FromASCII, FromLDAP and others) which are part of the Runtime component. To use the data discovery functionality, you need to install said Runtime components in a place accessible by the SAP NetWeaver AS Java hosting

the Identity Management Developer Studio service which needs to use them. Typically, installation is done on the same server.

It is a valid approach to have this installed on the Development landscape where pass configuration is done, and not on the Productive landscape where pass configuration is only transported, not modified.



SAP Identity Management Components

This table explains the mapping between the software component name and the technical component name.

Software Component	Technical Component
SAP Identity Management Developer Studio (in short, IdM DevStudio plugin)	IDM_CLM_ECLIPSE
SAP Identity Management Developer Studio Service (in short, IdM DevStudio service)	IDM_CLM_REST_API
SAP Identity Management Runtime (in short, IdM RT)	IDENTITYCENTERRT
SAP Identity Management User Interface (in short, IdM UI, IdM Admin UI)	IDMIC
SAP Identity Management User Interface for HTML5 (in short, IdM HTML5)	IDMUI5
SAP Identity Management REST Interface Version 2 (in short, REST API)	IDMREST
SAP Identity Management Portal Content (in short, Portal Content)	IDMPORTALCONT

Software Component	Technical Component
SAP Identity Management Core (in short, IdM Core)	IDENTITYCENTERCORE
Federation Software (in short, Identity Federation)	IDMFEDERATION

The SAP Identity Management components are available for download from the SAP Software Download Center on the SAP Support Portal. Install the prerequisites and the components in accordance with the diagram above and the installation sections covered by this guide.

The complete set of software components that make up SAP Identity Management is described in *Software Components of SAP Identity Management section* in *SAP Identity Management Master Guide*.

Related Information

Software Components of SAP Identity Management

2.2.2 Installation Options

This section describes the installation options covered by this installation guide.

You have to decide whether you want to install your SAP Identity Management system with all instances on one host or with the instances distributed over several hosts. The steps you have to perform vary according to the installation option you choose. You can choose between the following installation options:

- Standard System on One Host [page 10]
- Distributed System [page 12]

2.2.2.1 Standard System on One Host

You can install a **standard** system on a **single** host.

i Note

When installing a standard system, you must start the Software Provisioning Manager installation tool on the host where you want to install SAP Identity Management components.

An SAP system consists of SAP instances. An SAP instance is a group of processes that are started and stopped at the same time. In a **standard** system, all instances of the SAP Identity Management system and of the SAP NetWeaver AS Java with the additional deployables run on one host.



SAP Identity Management System with all Instances on One Host

The host where SAP Identity Management Core component is installed is considered the SAP global host. SAP global host is the host with the global file system.

i Note

As SAP Identity Management Core component consists of several parts: Identity Management database schema, configuration packages and keys utility, all of them must be installed on one host. It is not possible to install different parts of the Core component on different hosts (for example, installing Core component on <host l> and Identity Management database schema on <host l>).

i Note

Installing SAP Identity Management Core component on a remote database host is not supported. During installation, a message warns you that the database host you provide differs from the localhost where SWPM is started and where the Core component is to be installed.

In case of a standard system, the SAP Identity Management Core component, the first SAP Identity Management Dispatcher instance with Runtime components, the SAP Identity Management Developer Studio Service and the SAP Identity Management User Interface are installed on one host. The SAP NetWeaver Application Server (AS) Java that is necessary for some additional SAP Identity Management deployable components (see *Prerequisites and Dependencies Between Deployable Components*) is installed on the same host.

However, in a distributed system installation, it is recommended that this SAP NW AS Java system runs on a host different from SAP Identity Management Core component and the remaining SAP Identity Management

instances (see Distributed System [page 12]) For more information about installing an SAP Java system based on the supported SAP NetWeaver releases, see *Requirements on UNIX*.

SAP Identity Management Virtual Directory Server (first VDS instance) can be installed on the same host as well.

In addition to the first SAP Identity Management Dispatcher instance with Runtime components, you can install one or more additional Dispatcher instances and Virtual Directory Server instances which can also reside on the same host.

Related Information

Distributed System [page 12] Prerequisites and Dependencies Between Deployable Components [page 28] Requirements on UNIX [page 16]

2.2.2.2 Distributed System

You can install a system distributed over several hosts.

i Note

When installing a distributed system, you must start the Software Provisioning Manager installation tool on the hosts where you want to install SAP Identity Management components.

An SAP system consists of SAP instances. An SAP instance is a group of processes that are started and stopped at the same time. In a **distributed** system, every instance can run on a separate host.



SAP Identity Management System Distributed Over Several Hosts

The host where SAP Identity Management Core component is installed is considered the SAP global host. SAP global host is the host with the global file system.

\mathbf{i} Note

As SAP Identity Management Core component consists of several parts: Identity Management database schema, configuration packages and keys utility, all of them must be installed on one host. It is not possible to install different parts of the Core component on different hosts (for example, installing Core component on <host l> and Identity Management database schema on <host l>.

i Note

Installing SAP Identity Management Core component on a remote database host is not supported. During installation, a message warns you that the database host you provide differs from the localhost where SWPM is started and where the Core component is to be installed.

There must be at least one Dispatcher instance (the First Dispatcher instance) which can be installed to a host different from the SAP Identity Management Core component. In addition to the First Dispatcher instance, you can install one or more Additional Dispatcher instances and Virtual Directory Server (VDS) instances which can reside either on the same host as the First Dispatcher instance or on different hosts.

You have to deploy the required SAP Identity Management Developer Studio Service and SAP Identity Management User Interface components on an SAP system based on SAP NetWeaver Application Server (AS) Java. It is recommended that this AS Java system runs on a host different from SAP Identity Management Core component and the remaining SAP Identity Management instances. You can also deploy additional SAP Identity Management components (additional deployables) on this AS Java system, such as SAP Identity Management REST Interface Version 2, SAP Identity Management User Interface for HTML5 and SAP Identity Management Portal Content. For more information, see Prerequisites and Dependencies Between Deployable Components [page 28]

For more information about installing an SAP Java system based on the supported SAP NetWeaver releases, see *Requirements on UNIX*.

Related Information

Standard System on One Host [page 10] Requirements on UNIX [page 16]

2.2.3 Hardware and Software Requirements

Here you find information about the hardware and software requirements for the SAP Identity Management system hosts.

Related Information

Requirements on UNIX [page 16]

2.2.3.1 Running the Prerequisites Check in Standalone Mode (Optional)

This section describes how to run the prerequisites check in standalone mode. Running the prerequisites check in standalone mode is optional.

Context

When you install an SAP system, the software provisioning manager automatically starts the prerequisites check and checks the hardware and software requirements in the background. As an optional step during planning, you can also run the prerequisites check in standalone mode to check the hardware and software requirements for your operating system and the SAP instances before the actual installation.

→ Recommendation

Procedure

- 1. Download and unpack the Software Provisioning Manager archive to a local directory as described in Downloading and Extracting the Software Provisioning Manager 1.0 Archive [page 56].
- 2. Make either the separate SAPEXE<Version>. SAR archive or the complete kernel medium available as described in Preparing the Installation Media [page 55].
- 3. Start the software provisioning manager as described in Running Software Provisioning Manager [page 64].
- 4. On the Welcome screen, choose SAP_Product> SAP_Product> Preparations Prerequisites
 Check I
- 5. Follow the instructions in the software provisioning manager dialogs and enter the required parameters.

i Note

To find more information on each parameter during the *Define Parameters* phase, position the cursor on the required parameter input field, and choose either $\boxed{F1}$ or the *HELP* tab. Then the available help text is displayed in the *HELP* tab.

After you have finished, the *Parameter Summary* screen appears. This screen summarizes all parameters that you have entered and that you want to have checked. If you want to make a change, select the relevant parameters and choose *Revise*.

6. To start the prerequisites check, choose Next.

Results

The *Prerequisite Checker Results* screen displays the results found. If required, you can also check the results in file prerequisite_checker_results.html, which you can find in the installation directory.

Related Information

Downloading and Extracting the Software Provisioning Manager 1.0 Archive [page 56] Preparing the Installation Media [page 55]

2.2.3.2 Requirements on UNIX

Here you find the requirements for the installation on UNIX.

Requirements on UNIX

Requirement	Description
General Installation Infor- mation for Your Operating System	 AIX: Before you start the installation, make sure that you have read SAP Note 1972803. In addition, we also recommend that you check the information available in the SAP on AIX space on the SAP Community Network at http://scn.sap.com/community/aix/ HP-UX: Before you start the installation, make sure that you have read SAP Note 1075118. In addition, we also recommend that you check the information available in the SAP on HP-UX Best Practices space on the SAP Community Network at http://scn.sap.com/ community/hp-ux/ Linux: Before you start the installation, make sure that you have read the SAP Notes for your Linux distribution listed in the central SAP Note 171356. In addition, we also recommend that you check the information available in the SAP on Linux space on the SAP Community Network at http://scn.sap.com/ community/hp-ux/ Linux: Before you start the installation, make sure that you have read the SAP Notes for your Linux distribution listed in the central SAP Note 171356. In addition, we also recommend that you check the information available in the SAP on Linux space on the SAP Community Network at http://scn.sap.com/community/li- nux/ Solaris: The following requirement is only relevant when using IBM DB2: You need to have the perl module Unix::PasswdFile installed on the system. If it is not installed, configure Comprehensive Perl Archive Network (CPAN), so that perl is able to install modules. In addition, check whether you can use the sudo command properly.
Processing units	The number of physical or virtual processing units usable by the operating system image must be equal to or greater than 2. Examples of processing units are processor cores or hardware threads (multithreading). In a virtualized environment, ensure that adequate processor resources are available to support the workloads of the running SAP systems.
Optical media drive	ISO 9660 compatible

Requirement	Description
Minimum disk space	 SAP Identity Management Core Components: 4.0 GB Additional SAP Identity Management Dispatcher instance: 2.0 GB Up to 2.0 GB for each Virtual Directory Server instance. Up to 2.0 GB for each additional SAP Identity Management 8.0 components on a host where SAP NetWeaver AS Java is installed. Temporary disk space for every required installation medium that you have to copy to a local hard disk: 4.3 GB See also SAP Identity Management System Directories [page 44].
RAM	i Note AIX: Keep in mind that the operating system itself requires about 10% of the available RAM.
	 The following lists the RAM requirements for each SAP instance. If you install several instances on one host, you have to add up the requirements accordingly. SAP Identity Management Core Components: 4.0 GB Additional SAP Identity Management Dispatcher instance: 2.0 GB Up to 2.0 GB for each Virtual Directory Server instance. Up to 2.0 GB for each additional SAP Identity Management 8.0 components on a host
	where SAP NetWeaver AS Java is installed. HP-UX: Refer to SAP Note 1112627 for the commands to display the RAM size on HP-UX.
AIX Paging Space	 Linux: Reier to SAP Note 1382/217 for the commands to display the RAM size on Linux. You need hard disk drives with sufficient paging space. You can calculate the required paging space as follows: Optimistic strategy: You need at least 20 GB for the SAP Identity Management Core Component and at least another 10 GB for every additional SAP Identity Management Dispatcher instance. Defensive strategy: 2 # RAM at least 20 CB

Requirement	Description
HP-UX: Swap space	You need hard disk drives with sufficient space for swap. You can calculate the required swap space as follows:
	2 * RAM, at least 20 GB
	For more information about HP-UX swap space recommendations and about how to set up swap space, see SAP Note 1112627
Linux: Swap space	You need hard disk drives with sufficient space for swap. We recommend that you use the amount of swap space as described in SAP Note 1597355 A. You might decide to use more or less swap space based on your individual system configuration and your own experience during daily usage of the SAP system.
Database Software	You must have installed the database software before you start the installation of the SAP Identity Management system.
	For more information about supported database versions, see Supported Database Systems (Overview) [page 22].
	When installing the Identity Management database on the supported database systems, note the following prerequisites and recommendations:
	Prerequisites and Recommendations (Oracle) [page 23]
	Prerequisites and Recommendations (IBM DB2) [page 24]
	Prerequisites and Recommendations (SAP ASE) [page 25]
JDBC driver	You must have downloaded the JDBC driver for the corresponding database.
	For more information, see Installing the JDBC Drivers [page 26].
SAP NetWeaver Java sys- tem for SAP Identity Man- agement components	To deploy SAP Identity Management components on a SAP NetWeaver Java system, make sure that a SAP Java system based on SAP NetWeaver is available in your system landscape. The following SAP NetWeaver releases are supported:
	SAP NetWeaver 7.3 SP09 or higher
	SAP NetWeaver 7.3 including Enhancement Package 1 SP06 Patch 3 or higher
	SAP NetWeaver 7.4 SP02 or higher
	SAP NetWeaver 7.5 SP08 or higher
	For more information about installing an SAP Java system based on the listed SAP Net-
	Weaver releases, see the installation guides at http://help.sap.com/sltoolset
	Provisioning $ ight angle$ Guide for Systems Based on SAP NetWeaver 7.1 and Higher $ ight angle$ Installation
	Guides by Database >> <database>> Java >></database>

Requirement	Description
AIX: Operating system ver-	Your operating system platform must be 64-bit.
sion	Check the Product Availability Matrix (PAM) at http://support.sap.com/pam/>> for sup- ported operating system versions.
	Contact your OS vendor for the latest OS patches.
	Minimal OS requirements for the specific SAP Kernel releases are listed in SAP Note 1780629
HP-UX: Operating system	Your operating system platform must be 64-bit.
version	Check the Product Availability Matrix (PAM) at http://support.sap.com/pam/>> for sup- ported operating system versions.
	To check the operating system version on your installation hosts, use the following command:
	uname -r
	See SAP Note 939891 // for information about support time frames of HP-UX.
Linux: Operating system	Your operating system platform must be 64-bit.
version	Check the Product Availability Matrix (PAM) at http://support.sap.com/pam/>> for sup- ported operating system versions.
	Contact your OS vendor for the latest OS patches.
	To check the operating system version on your installation hosts, use the following command:
	cat /etc/*-release
AIX: Kernel parameters	To adjust AIX kernel parameters, see SAP Note 628131
	To adjust AIX Virtual Memory Management settings, see SAP Note 973227 🍫.

Requirement	Description
HP-UX: Kernel parameters	To run an SAP system, make sure that you check and, if necessary, modify the HP-UX kernel.
	△ Caution
	We recommend that a UNIX system administrator performs all kernel modifications.
	Proceed as follows:
	1. Check SAP Note 172747 for recommendations on current HP-UX kernel parameters.
	If a kernel value is already larger than the one suggested in the SAP Note, do not automatically reduce it to match the SAP requirement.
	You have to analyze the exact meaning of such a parameter and, if required, to reduce the parameter value. In some cases this might improve the performance of your SAP applications.
	2. If necessary, modify the kernel parameters in one of the following ways:
	 Manually, as described in SAP Note 172747[*]. Interactively, using the HP-UX System Administrator Manager (SAM) or System Management Homepage (SMH).
Linux: Kernel parameters	Check SAP Note 171356 for Linux kernel versions certified by SAP.
	To check the Linux kernel parameters for your Linux distribution, see one of the following SAP Notes:
	Oracle Linux: SAP Note 1565179
	RHEL4: SAP Note 722273
	RHEL5: SAP Note 1048303
	• RHEL6: SAP Note 1496410
	SLES9: SAP Note 797084
	• SLES10: SAP Note 958253
	SLES 11: SAP Note 1310037
HP-UX: OS patches	To check the minimum required OS patches, see SAP Note 837670 /2.
AIX: National Language Support (NLS)	Make sure that National Language Support (NLS) and corresponding locales are installed.

Requirement	Description
HP-UX: National Language	Make sure that National Language Support (${\tt NLS}$) and corresponding <code>locales</code> are installed.
Support (NLS)	You can check this as follows:
	 Enter the following commands to check whether National Language Support (NLS) is installed: swlist -v grep -i nls The output should contain the string NLS-AUX Enter the following commands to check which locales are available: locale -a The following files must be available: de_DE.iso88591, en_US.iso88591.
Linux: National Language Support (NLS)	Make sure that National Language Support (NLS) and corresponding locales are installed.
	 Ensure that the required locales such as the following are available: de_DE, en_US Check SAP Note 187864 for information about corrected operating system locales and SAP blended Code Pages.
System language	For the installation, you must choose English as the operating system language on all hosts that run SAP software.
Minimum Web Browser	 Make sure that you have at least one of the following web browsers installed on the host where you run the installer GUI: Internet Explorer 9.0 or higher Mozilla Firefox
	 Google Chrome You need this to be able to display the Evaluation Form and send it to SAP.
AIX: Additional software	 Make sure that the following additional file sets are installed: bos.adt - Base Application Development bos.perf - performance and diagnostics tools perfagent.tools - performance monitoring tools bos.perf.libperfstat - Performance Statistics Library
Host name	To find out physical host names, open a command prompt and enter hostname . For more information about the allowed host name length and characters allowed for SAP system instance hosts, see SAP Note 611361. For HP-UX, see SAP Note 1503149. in addition.

Requirement	Description
Login shell	The installer only prompts you for this parameter if you use a login shell other than the recommended C shell (csh).
	For more information, see SAP Note 202227 🍫.
	SAP Host Agent installation:
	• Make sure that /bin/false can be used as a login shell.
	• AIX only: Add /bin/false to the list of valid login shells (attribute shells) in /etc/ security/login.cfg.
HP-UX: Mount and file system configuration	For recommendations about block size and mount option configuration, see SAP Note 1077887
Shared file systems for de- centralized systems	If application servers are installed decentralized, a "shared" file system must be installed, for example Network File System (NFS).
AIX: C++ Runtime environ- ment	Minimal C++ runtime requirements for the specific SAP Kernel releases are listed in SAP Note 1780629
Linux: C compiler	Make sure that the C compiler gcc is installed.

2.2.3.3 Supported Database Systems (Overview)

SAP Identity Management supports the following database systems:

- Oracle
- IBM DB2

The installation is available from the SAP Software Download Center on the SAP Support Portal. In the SAP Software Download Center, go to Databases Database and Database Patches and download installation and support package files for SAP and third-party databases.

i Note

If you are running the IBM DB2 database on the same server as the SAP NetWeaver AS Java, change the port number from 50000 to something else, as this will conflict with the default port number of SAP NetWeaver AS Java. The default value used in the database install scripts for the Identity Center database is 52222.

• SAP Adaptive Server Enterprise (SAP ASE)

Do not use native database tools to maintain the Identity Management database in a productive system. Do not manually delete queues or update entries, for example. Perform all database maintenance using the tools provided by SAP Identity Management, such as user interfaces, jobs, and tasks.

i Note

We recommend that you always use the most recent database version. For more information about the supported database versions, see the Product Availability Matrix

Refer to the database system documentation for details about installation and how to install and configure a clustered database.

Related Information

SAP Software Download Center on SAP Support Portal

2.2.3.3.1 Prerequisites and Recommendations (Oracle)

When installing the Identity Management database on Oracle, note the following prerequisites and recommendations:

Character set

When installing the Identity Management database on Oracle, make sure that the database has been created with the AL32UTF8 character set so that it is possible to store data in the Japanese character set using UTF-8.

Database naming

If you plan to install remote Oracle clients that can access your database on the server, it might be a good idea to use the same database name (SID) on the Oracle server and the Oracle clients. If your server name is SERVER1 for example, you could call your database ORCL_DBSERVER1 and use this name when defining the connections strings for the dispatcher and data sources in SAP NetWeaver.

- Create as Container database If you use Oracle 12.1 (12c Release 1), 18.0.0.0 and 19.0.0.0, make sure the *Create as Container database* option is not selected.
- Oracle DB tablespaces You need to create a tablespace named USERS and a temporary tablespace named TEMP in the Oracle database.
- Number of cursors
 Make sure that the maximum number of cursors in Oracle is set to 600 or more. If not, increase the number and restart the Oracle database.
- Access Control List for the network utility package UTL_INADDR The database installation script can create the necessary Access Control List to allow the <prefix>_prov_role the necessary access to UTL_INADDR.
 To create the Access Control List in an existing database, see 1610907/2.
- i Note

Installing SAP Identity Management and SAP NetWeaver AS Java on the same Oracle database is not supported. You must install SAP Identity Management and SAP NetWeaver AS Java either on different databases on the same database server, or on different Oracle database servers.

2.2.3.3.2 Prerequisites and Recommendations (IBM DB2)

Do not use SAPinst for the installation of IBM DB2. The DB2 installation has to be created by using db2setup wizard. If a default instance is created, groups, users, home directory, and environment variables are as expected by the setup script. For the IDM installation, you need to set the DB2_COMPATIBILITY_VECTOR registry variable to the value ORA, for example: DB2_COMPATIBILITY_VECTOR=ORA. This setting cannot be set if SAPinst is used for the installation.

For UNIX/Linux

To install the database on UNIX/Linux, the following software is required:

• IBM DB2 CLPPlus

In the command line processor plus (CLPPlus), the following commands: db2start, db2set and db2stop, should run with the user executing the installation that has all relevant environment variables set correctly.

Bash

Shell scripts are written for bash shell, thus the UNIX operating system should have bash shell installed. All shell scripts should be executable before running them on UNIX. Note that you might encounter some issues for other shell types in UNIX.

Bash should be the default shell of the database administrator user (db2<admin>).

• sudo

i Note

On UNIX operating systems, the names of database objects, user names, passwords, groups, files, and paths are case sensitive. You must use lower case letters.

For more information about installing the database on AIX/IBM DB2, see SAP KBA AIX/DB2 Installation tips for IDM 8.0 2190133

i Note

Make sure that the JAVA_HOME environment variable for db2<admin> user is pointing to the correct Java PATH. It must point to the supported Java version 1.8.

Installing sudo on IBM AIX

On IBM AIX, sudo is normally not a part of the default installation, and must be added separately. The installation is available as part of the IBM AIX Toolbox, which can be downloaded from: IBM AIX Toolbox download information

The whole package: AIX Toolbox for Linux Applications *k*

For information about how to install sudo, see the IBM documentation.

i Note

In your sudo configuration, do not allow users, such as db2idm, to use sudo without specifying the root user password. Configure sudo to ask for the root password instead of the db2idm user password by adding *Defaults targetpw* line in /etc/sudoers file. This setting requires the root password when running sudo.

2.2.3.3.3 Prerequisites and Recommendations (SAP ASE)

Currently, you are able to choose between two SAP ASE editions - SAP ASE Enterprise edition and SAP ASE Runtime edition.

When installing the Identity Management database on SAP ASE, note the following prerequisites and recommendations:

• SAP ASE Enterprise edition

Install the SAP ASE Enterprise edition using the SAP ASE installer with you own enterprise license.

▲ Caution

Do not use SAPinst for the installation of SAP ASE.

For more information about how to install SAP ASE on different platforms, see SAP ASE Installation Guides in the SAP Adaptive Server Enterprise documentation.

• SAP ASE Runtime edition

After the release of SWPM 1.0 SP39, you are able to use SWPM to install the SAP ASE Runtime edition with an embedded runtime license. For more information, see 2686693 . To install the SAP ASE Runtime edition via SWPM, follow the steps below :

- 1. On the Welcome screen of SWPM, choose SAP Identity Management > Preparations > SAP ASE
 - SAP ASE Database Instance for SAP Identity Management System 🔰.
- 2. Follow the Software Provisioning Manager guidance to set up your SAP ASE database instance. The database server will be installed with the configuration options mentioned below.

i Note

As database software media use SAP ADAPTIVE SERVER ENTERPRISE DATABASE SAP ASE FOR BUSINESS SUITE SAP ASE 16.0 FOR BUS. SUITE from SAP Software Center.

Page Size

The Page Size should be 16k. The default value is 4k.

Character Set

The Default Character Set should be utf8: Unicode 3.1 UTF-8 Character Set

Sort Order

The Default Sort Order should be utf8_nocase: Case insensitive ordering, for use with any utf8-based 8-bit environment.

Transaction Log

The *trunc log on chkpt* database option (truncates the transaction log when an automatic checkpoint occurs) is set to *off*. This is the default value.

If you leave the *trunc log on chkpt* option set to *off*, the transaction log continues to grow. To protect your log from running out of space, you need to implement your backup solution that copies the transaction log before truncating it. For more information, see *Truncating the Log After Automatic Checkpoints*.

Optimization Goal and Optimizer Level

→ Recommendation

If you are using SAP Identity Management on SAP ASE 16 or higher, we recommend you to check that the configuration parameters are set as follows: optimization goal to **allrows_mix**, and optimizer level to **ase_default** at the server level.

Installing SAP Identity Management and SAP NetWeaver AS Java on the same SAP ASE database server is not supported. However, you can install them on separate SAP ASE database servers, running on the same or on separate hosts. For more information, see 1811976 .

net password encryption reqd

Do not change the default value: **o**. Otherwise, you may receive "Incorrect password or settings" error when logging into the Dispatcher Utility.

When set to its default value, this property allows the client to choose the encryption algorithm used for login passwords on the network, including no password encryption.

Related Information

Truncating the Log After Automatic Checkpoints

2.2.3.4 Installing the JDBC Drivers

The JDBC drivers are used by the runtime components to access databases, both the Identity Management database and other data sources that are accessed using JDBC.

The SAP NetWeaver AS for Java running the Identity Management user interface needs the JDBC driver to access the Identity Management database.

The correct JDBC driver must be installed on all servers running any of the following components:

- Runtime components
 - Dispatcher JDBC driver for the Identity Management database
 - Runtime engine (Java) JDBC driver(s) for the Identity Management database and any other databases/data sources that are accessed

- Identity Management Developer Studio service JDBC driver for the Identity Management database
- Identity Management user interface JDBC driver for the Identity Management database

Related Information

Oracle JDBC Driver [page 27] IBM DB2 JDBC Driver [page 27] SAP ASE JDBC Driver [page 28] JDBC Drivers for External Systems [page 28]

2.2.3.4.1 Oracle JDBC Driver

Use the recommended JDBC driver for your Oracle version.

You can download the JDBC driver ojdbc<JDK version>.jar for your Oracle version from the Oracle JDBC Downloads page. Follow the installation instructions provided on the installation web page.

Related Information

Oracle Web Site 📌

2.2.3.4.2 IBM DB2 JDBC Driver

The JDBC driver for IBM DB2 is installed with the database client.

By default it is installed in this folder:

• UNIX: /opt/ibm/db2/V10.1/java, where /opt/ibm/db2/V10.1/ is where IBM DB2 is installed.

The file name is: db2jcc4.jar.

The JDBC driver name is: com.ibm.db2.jcc.DB2Driver.

Make sure that the file name is added to the classpath.

2.2.3.4.3 SAP ASE JDBC Driver

Use the following JDBC driver:

Database Version	JDBC Driver Version	
SAP ASE 16.0	JDBC 4.0	
The JDBC driver for SAP ASE is installed with the database client. By default it is installed in the following folder:		

<ASE_install_directory>/jConnect-16_0/classes/jconn4.jar

The name of the JDBC driver is: com.sybase.jdbc4.jdbc.SybDriver

Make sure that the CLASSPATH is set to the correct file: <ASE_install_directory>/jConnect-16_0/ classes/jconn4.jar.

If you experience issues with the JDBC connection, refer to the SAP Note 2270221/2.

2.2.3.4.4 JDBC Drivers for External Systems

Any JDBC drivers that are accessed by the runtime components must be installed and made available on all servers. These JDBC drivers must be obtained from the vendor of the database or another data source.

2.2.3.5 Prerequisites and Dependencies Between Deployable Components

This section describes the prerequisites for the SAP Identity Management components deployed on SAP NetWeaver AS Java, as well as the dependencies between those components.

Verify that the prerequisites and dependencies between components deployed on SAP NetWeaver AS Java are met. Otherwise, the deployment on AS Java might fail.

i Note

The following installation tools are used for deploying SAP Identity Management components on SAP NetWeaver AS Java:

- Software Provisioning Manager (SWPM) tool deploys SAP Identity Management components on SAP NetWeaver AS Java.
- Software Update Manager (SUM) tool deploys AS Java Extension (SCA file) that is a prerequisite for SAP Identity Management User Interface for HTML5 component.
 You need to use SUM to fulfil the required prerequisites before running the SWPM tool. For more information, see Using the Software Update Manager (SUM) 1.0 [page 33]

Components Deployed on SAP NetWeaver AS Java

Components	Prerequisites	Dependencies
SAP Identity Management REST Interface Version 2	 One of the supported SAP NetWeaver versions is correctly installed and licensed. SAP NetWeaver 7.3 SP09 or higher SAP NetWeaver 7.3 including Enhancement Package 1 SP06 Patch 3 or higher SAP NetWeaver 7.4 SP02 or higher SAP NetWeaver 7.5 SP08 or higher 	SAP Identity Management User Inter- face is installed and configured.
SAP Identity Management User Interface for HTML5	 One of the supported SAP NetWeaver versions is correctly installed and licensed. SAP NetWeaver 7.3 SP09 or higher SAP NetWeaver 7.3 including Enhancement Package 1 SP06 Patch 3 or higher SAP NetWeaver 7.4 SP02 or higher SAP NetWeaver 7.5 SP08 or higher SAP NetWeaver 7.5 SP08 or higher SAP NetWeaver version you are using. Download the library extension for the SAP NetWeaver version you are using. Download the library extension from the SAP Software Download Center and deploy the downloaded SCA file on your AS Java server, using the Software Update Manager [page 33]. Locate the correct SAPUI5 library on the SAP Software Download Center: Support Packages and Patches A - Z Index N SAP NETWEAVER Support Packages and Patches A - Z Index N SAP NETWEAVER Support Packages and Patches SAPUI5 CLIENT RT AS JAVA <your nw="" sap="" version=""></your> # OS independent . For browser support information, see the SAP note for your SAP NetWeaver version: For SAP NetWeaver 7.3: 1509421 For SAP NetWeaver 7.4: 1793938 You should have the following knowledge: Thorough knowledge about SAP NetWeaver AS for Java and its tools. Thorough knowledge about SAP Identity Management Developer Studio, in particular. 	SAP Identity Management User Inter- face is installed and configured. SAP Identity Management REST Inter- face Version 2 is deployed on your AS Java (where the SAP Identity Management User Interface is de- ployed). SAP Identity Management Developer Studio version 8.0, must be installed and licensed.

Components	Prerequisites	Dependencies
SAP Identity Management Portal Content	 One of the supported SAP NetWeaver versions is correctly installed and licensed. SAP NetWeaver 7.3 SP09 or higher SAP NetWeaver 7.3 including Enhancement Package 1 SP06 Patch 3 or higher SAP NetWeaver 7.4 SP02 or higher SAP NetWeaver 7.5 SP08 or higher SAP Enterprise Portal is available on one of the supported SAP NetWeaver versions. Universal Worklist (UWL) is configured on the portal. Configuring the Universal Worklist for SAP NetWeaver 7.3 Configuring the Universal Worklist for SAP NetWeaver 7.3 EHP1 Configuring the Universal Worklist for SAP NetWeaver 7.4 Configuring the Universal Worklist for SAP NetWeaver 7.5 You have the administrative authorizations on the portal and on the SAP Identity Management systems. 	SAP Identity Management User Inter- face is installed and configured.

Components	Prerequisites	Dependencies
SAP Identity Management De- veloper Studio Service	 One of the supported SAP NetWeaver versions is correctly installed and licensed. SAP NetWeaver 7.3 SP09 or higher SAP NetWeaver 7.3 including Enhancement Package 1 SP06 Patch 3 or higher SAP NetWeaver 7.4 SP02 or higher SAP NetWeaver 7.5 SP08 or higher SAP NetWeaver 7.5 SP08 or higher SAP NetWeaver AS for Java version. Installing the SAP Cryptographic Library for SSL for SAP NetWeaver 7.3 Installing the SAP Cryptographic Library for SSL for SAP NetWeaver 7.3 EHP1 Installing the SAP Cryptographic Library for SSL for SAP NetWeaver 7.4 Installing the SAP Cryptographic Library for SSL for SAP NetWeaver 7.4 Installing the SAP Cryptographic Library for SSL for SAP NetWeaver 7.4 Installing the SAP Cryptographic Library for SSL for SAP NetWeaver 7.5 Basic knowledge about the SAP NetWeaver AS for Java and its tools. Administrator rights for the SAP NetWeaver AS for Java server. 	SAP Identity Management Runtime components are installed. i Note For data discovery purposes, the SAP Identity Management Runtime components must be installed on the same server as where the SAP Identity Management Devel- oper Studio service is installed.

Components	Prerequisites	Dependencies
SAP Identity Management User Interface	 One of the supported SAP NetWeaver versions is correctly installed and licensed. SAP NetWeaver 7.3 SP09 or higher 	SAP Identity Management Developer Studio version 8.0, must be correctly installed and licensed.
	 SAP NetWeaver 7.3 including Enhancement Package 1 SP06 Patch 3 or higher SAP NetWeaver 7.4 SP02 or higher SAP NetWeaver 7.5 SP08 or higher Clickjacking protection service for AS Java is enabled: 	This includes deploying the Identity Management Developer Studio service, adding the Identity Management data- base as the data source on your AS Java and installing an Identity Manage- ment Developer Studio client.
	 Enabling the Clickjacking Protection Service for SAP NetWeaver 7.3 	
	• Enabling the Clickjacking Protection Service for EHP 1 for SAP NetWeaver 7.3	
	 Enabling the Clickjacking Protection Service for SAP NetWeaver 7.4 	
	 Enabling the Clickjacking Protection Service for SAP NetWeaver 7.5 	
	 Basic knowledge about the SAP NetWeaver AS for Java and its tools. 	
	 When giving certain accesses to the Identity Management User Interface, basic knowl- edge about the Identity Management Devel- oper Studio is required. 	
	 For browser support information, see the SAP note for your SAP NetWeaver version: 	
	For SAP NetWeaver 7.3: 1509421	
	 For SAP NetWeaver 7.4: 1793938 For questions related to browser support with Web Dynpro for Java, see the SAP KBA: 1618309 	

2.2.3.5.1 Using the Software Update Manager (SUM) 1.0

The Software Update Manager (SUM) is a multi-purpose tool that supports various processes, such as performing a release upgrade, installing enhancement packages, applying Support Package Stacks, installing add-ons, or updating single components on SAP NetWeaver.

Prerequisites

 Make sure that the latest version of Software Update Manager 1.0 is downloaded and available on your SAP NetWeaver AS for Java. Software Update Manager 1.0 is part of the Software Logistics Toolset delivery and available for download from SAP Software Download Center. You can download the SUM archive from the main Software Logistics Toolset page

at: https://support.sap.com/en/tools/software-logistics-tools.html

UPDATE MANAGER 1.0 SUPPORT PACKAGE PATCHES < your OS>].

- You can access the SUM documentation from the main Software Logistics Toolset page at: https://support.sap.com/en/tools/software-logistics-tools.html Software Update Manager (SUM) scenarios
 Software Update/Upgrade with SUM 1.0 SP<Version> Guides for SUM 1.0 SP<Version> For SAP NetWeaver AS for Java, there are specific guides for the combinations of operating systems and databases.
- Before running and using the SUM 1.0, you have to complete all required preparation and planning actions in the SUM 1.0 user guide.
- Make sure that the SAP system and its database are started.
- On the host where you want to start the SL Common GUI of the Software Update Manager, Java 6 or higher has to be installed.
- SAP Host Agent has been configured on your system with the minimum version required for your scenario. For more information, see *Installing or Updating SAP Host Agent* in the *Update of SAP Systems Using Software Update Manager* guide that is relevant for your operating system and database.

Context

In the case of SAP Identity Management, you need SUM in the following processes:

• SAP Identity Management installation with SWPM

In this case, you need SUM to deploy AS Java Extensions (SCA files) on the SAP NetWeaver AS Java system as a prerequisite for the following two components:

SAP Identity Management User Interface for HTML5

For more information about the SCA files, see Prerequisites and Dependencies Between Deployable Components [page 28]

- SAP Identity Management manual update (that is, without using SWPM) In this case, you need SUM to deploy the new version of SAP Identity Management components that are deployed on SAP NetWeaver AS Java system:
 - SAP Identity Management Developer Studio Service

- SAP Identity Management User Interface
- SAP Identity Management REST Interface version 2
- SAP Identity Management User Interface for HTML5
- SAP Identity Management Portal Content
- Identity Federation

For more information about deploying a new version of SAP Identity Management components, see the topics under Updating SAP Identity Management Components [page 188] section.

To start and use the Software Update Manager 1.0, proceed as follows:

Procedure

- 1. Get the Software Update Manager running on the primary application server instance, as described in Running the Software Update Manager [page 34]
- 2. Start the SL Common GUI of the Software Update Manager, as described in Starting the SL Common GUI of the Software Update Manager [page 35].
- 3. Logon to the Software Update Manager and deploy the SCA file(s), as described in Deploying Using the Software Update Manager [page 36].

2.2.3.5.1.1 Running the Software Update Manager

Context

To run the Software Update Manager on the application server (primary application server instance), proceed as follows:

Procedure

- 1. Log on to the host on which the primary application server instance is running as user <SAPSID>adm (instance user).
- 2. Unpack the Software Update Manager package (<archive>.SAR) with the following command:
 - for UNIX:

SAPCAR -xf <download directory>/<path>/<Archive>.SAR -R /usr/sap/<sid>

This command creates the directory SUM under the /usr/sap/<sid> directory. You can also specify a directory other than /usr/sap/<sid>. In the following, the directory /<path to SUM directory>/SUM is referred to as <update directory>.

i Note

The complete path to the SUM folder must not exceed 30 characters.

- 3. Start the Software Update Manager entering the following command:
 - for UNIX:

```
cd /usr/sap/<SID>/SUM
./STARTUP confighostagent <SID>
```

i Note

Always call the script with the root user.

Related Information

Using the Software Update Manager (SUM) 1.0 [page 33]

2.2.3.5.1.2 Starting the SL Common GUI of the Software Update Manager

Context

This section describes how you start the SL Common UI and the SUM back-end process.

Procedure

- 1. Open a web browser window.
- In the address bar, enter the following URL: https://<hostname>:1129/lmsl/sumjava/<SID>/ index.html.

Replace <hostname> with the name of the host on which the Software Update Manager is running.

i Note

If the SSL is not configured, use http instead of https at the beginning of the URL, and use port 1128: http://<hostname>:1128/lmsl/sumjava/<SID>/index.html

3. In the dialog box that appears, enter the user name **<sid>adm** and the password.

Results

The SAP Host Agent starts the Software Update Manager, and the SL Common GUI of the Software Update Manager is displayed in the web browser.

Related Information

Using the Software Update Manager (SUM) 1.0 [page 33]

2.2.3.5.1.3 Deploying Using the Software Update Manager

Context

The Software Update Manager controls the entire procedure, from checking the system requirements and importing the necessary programs through stopping production operation until production operation is resumed. The procedure is divided up into a number of different roadmap steps. The roadmap steps are in turn divided into phases. Many phases require no user input - step through those by choosing *Next*. The successful completion of a phase is a precondition for the success of all subsequent phases.

i Note

User actions are also required when errors occur. If an error occurs, correct it and repeat the phase in which the error has occurred. Once the phase has been repeated successfully, you can continue with the update.

To logon to the Software Update Manager and deploy the SCA file(s), do the following:

Procedure

- 1. Enter the user name and the password for the AS Java administrator user with which you log in to the system.
- 2. In the *Specify Credentials* roadmap step, specify the password for the instance user (<sapsid>adm), and then choose *Next*.
- 3. In the Select Target roadmap step, specify the path to the SCA file in the Directory field, then choose Next.
- 4. In the *Confirm Target* roadmap step, enter the keyword that is specified in the current *Central Software Update Manager Note* (which you can find in the Software Update Manager upgrade guide or in SAP Support Portal). Confirm the selected target system version by choosing *Next*.
- 5. In the *Configuration* roadmap step, provide the password of the AS Java administrator before proceeding. In this step it is also possible to specify the composition of the target release system.
6. Step through the phases requiring no user input by choosing *Next* and complete the process. Upon completing the process successfully, the important statistics are collected in a comprehensive report.

Next Steps

Every time you have used SUM, you need to either delete the SUM folder or rename it and keep it (if you would like, but this is not necessary). Then you have to extract a new SUM folder from the SUM. SAR file.

Use SAPCAR.EXE to extract the SAR file. Do the following:

- 1. In the command prompt, change to the directory to which you have downloaded or copied the SUM archives (the directory of the SUM. SAR file).
- Start SAPCAR to extract the archive to the current directory. Enter
 <path to sapcar.exe>\sapcar.exe
 -xvf SUM.SAR
 and run the command line.
- 3. The SUM. SAR file should now be extracted and the new SUM folder created. You may now use SUM again.

Related Information

SAP Notes & SAP Knowledge Base Articles Using the Software Update Manager (SUM) 1.0 [page 33]

2.2.4 Installation Parameters

This section lists the input parameters you are recommended to plan and prepare **before** you start the installation.

Note that this is not a complete list of input parameters. Further parameters that you do not need to plan and prepare beforehand are documented on the screens and in the F1 Help of Software Provisioning Manager.

General Parameters

Parameter	Description
Master Password	Common password for all users that are created during the installation:
	Operating system users
	▲ Caution
	If you did not create the operating system users manually before the installation, Software Provisioning Manager creates them with the common master password (see <i>Operating System Users</i>). In this case, make sure that the master password meets the requirements of your operating system.
	Password policy
	The master password must meet the following requirements:
	It must be 8 to 30 characters long
	It must contain at least one digit (0-9)
	 It must not contain \ (backslash) and " (double quote)
	i Note
	Check the password policy of your database vendor for other special characters that are not allowed in passwords.
	• Oracle: It must not begin with a digit nor an underscore
	• Oracle: It can contain the following characters: _, #, \$, a-z, A-Z, 0-9
	 Depending on the configuration of the password policy, additional restrictions may ap- ply.
SAP System ID <sapsid></sapsid>	The SAP system ID $<$ $\tt SAPSID>$ identifies the entire SAP Identity Management system.
of the SAP Identity Manage- ment Core Component sys- tem to be installed	Software Provisioning Manager prompts you for the <sapsid> when you execute the first installation option to install a new SAP system.</sapsid>
	If there are further installation options to be executed, Software Provisioning Manager prompts you for the profile directory. For more information, see the description of the parameter SAP System Profile Directory.
	Choose your SAP system ID carefully. Renaming is difficult and might require a system reinstallation.
	Make sure that your SAP system ID:
	 Is unique throughout your organization. Do not use an existing <sapsid> when installing a new SAP system.</sapsid>
	Consists of exactly three alphanumeric characters
	Contains only uppercase letters
	Has a letter for the first character

• Does not include any of the reserved IDs listed in SAP Note 1979280

Parameter	Description		
UNIX:/ <sapmnt>/ <sapsid>/profile</sapsid></sapmnt>	Software Provisioning Manager retrieves parameters from the SAP system profile directory of an existing SAP system.		
Of /usr/sap/	SAP profiles are operating system files that contain instance configuration information.		
(DAIDID-), DID (PIOTITC	Software Provisioning Manager prompts you to enter the location of the profile directory when the installation option that you execute is not the first one belonging to your SAP system installation, for example if you are installing a distributed system or an additional instance to an existing SAP system.		
Instance Number	An instance number is assigned to the following instances of the SAP Identity Management system:		
	SAP Identity Management Dispatcher instanceVirtual Directory Server instance		
	Technical identifier for internal processes. It consists of a two-digit number from 00 to 97.		
	The instance number must be unique on a host. That is, if more than one SAP instance is running on the same host, these instances must be assigned different numbers.		
	If you do not enter a specific value, the instance number is set automatically to the next free and valid instance number that has not yet been assigned to the SAP system to be installed or to SAP systems that already exist on the installation host.		
	To find out the instance numbers of SAP systems that already exist on the installation host, look for subdirectories ending with <instance_number> of local (not mounted) /usr/sap/<sapsid> directories.</sapsid></instance_number>		
	▲ Caution HP-UX: Do not use 75 for the instance number because this number is already used by the operating system. For more information, see SAP Note 29972 ^A .		
SAP System ID <sapsid> of the existing SAP NetWea- ver Java system required for deployment of additional SAP Identity Management components</sapsid>	The SAP system ID <sapsid> identifies the entire SAP NetWeaver Java system which is required on the host where additional SAP Identity Management components are to be deployed.</sapsid>		
SAP Identity Management Secure Store	Encryption AlgorithmHash Algorithm		
	For more information, see Encryption and Hashing.		

Database Parameters

Parameter	Description		
SAP Identity Management Database Schema and Base Qualified Name	The Database Schema Prefix is the prefix of the Identity Management database.		
	If you want to have several Identity Management databases on the same installation of Oracle, SAP ASE or IBM DB2 for Linux, UNIX, and Windows (IBM DB2), each SAP Identity Management database must have its own prefix.		
	→ Recommendation We recommend using uppercase alphanumeric values (A-Z, 0-9) for the prefix, except for IBM DB2 on UNIX operating systems, where the prefix must contain lowercase alphanu- meric values only (a-z, 0-9). When using IBM DB2, make sure that the length of the prefix does not exceed two characters, for example, 'ic' (on UNIX operating systems).		
	The Base-Qualified Name is used for all SAP Identity Management packages in this database.		
	i Note		
	The base qualified name can contain only alphanumeric values (A-Z, a-z, 0-9), under- score (_) and period (.). Following the convention, you can use your company's reversed Internet domain name for the base qualified name of your packages. For example, if your company has the domain name acme.com , you can use the reversed domain name com.acme for the base qualified name.		
Database Host	The Database Host is the host name of the server where the SAP Identity Management database is to run.		
Database Port	The Database Port is the port of the server where the SAP Identity Management database is to run.		
Database Users	The Identity Management database uses roles, which are assigned to users. See Database Roles and Users [page 42].		
Developer Administrator	The name of the developer administrator for this database.		
User	i Note This user must either exist in the UME or be added to the UME before you can log on to Identity Management Developer Studio.		

Parameter	Description		
JDBC Driver Parameters	The JDBC drivers are used by the runtime components to access the Identity Management database.		
	 JDBC Driver Location This is the path to JDBC Driver. IBM DB2: For example: /opt/ibm/db2/V10.1/java, where /opt/ibm/db2/V10.1/ is where IBM DB2 is installed. Oracle: You can choose between Oracle Thin Driver and Oracle OCI Driver SAP ASE: For example: <ase_install_directory>/jConnect-16_0/classes/jconn4.jar</ase_install_directory> JDBC Driver Class This is the JDBC Driver Class Name of the JDBC driver that is required by the runtime engine. IBM DB2: For example: com.ibm.db2.jcc.DB2Driver Oracle: For example: oracle.jdbc.driver.OracleDriver SAP ASE: For example: com.sybase.jdbc4.jdbc.SybDriver 		
	For more information, see Installing the JDBC Drivers [page 26].		
Oracle Database Parame- ters	The data tablespace and the index tablespace are containers of data files in which database tables and indexes are stored.		
	 Data Tablespace Name and Index Tablespace Name: The default value of the Data Tablespace Name and Index Tablespace Name is USERS. Net Service Name: The Net Service Name is the name you want to use to connect to the database over the network. The default value is orcl. Access Control List: You can specify whether you want the Access Control List for the network utility package UTL_INADDR to be created. The Access Control List grants the <pre>prefix>_prov_role</pre> the necessary access to UTL_INADDR. 		
Database Parameters for	Storage Path:		
IBM DB2 for UNIX, Win- dows, and Linux:	The Storage Path is the path to the folder where the database is to be installed. For example: /usr/sap/db2/ic		
	Temporary Tablespace Name:		
	The Temporary Tablespace Name used by IBM DB2. For example: USERTEMP		
Database Parameters for	SAP ASE Data Path:		
UNI NUL.	The SAP ASE Data Path is the path to the data file of MXMC_db. For example: /usr/sap/data SAP ASE Log Path:		
	The SAP ASE Log Path is the path to the log file. It has to be the same as the SAP ASE Data Path.		

Operating System Users

Parameter	Definition	
UNIX: Operating System Users and	Software Provisioning Manager processes the operating system users as follows:	
Groups	 If the operating system users do not exist, Software Provisioning Manager creates the following users: 	
	 The SAP system administrator user <sapsid>adm</sapsid> Database administrator users 	
	Software Provisioning Manager sets the master password for these users by default. You can overwrite and change the passwords either by using the parameter mode Custom or by changing them on the parameter summary screen.	
	 If the operating system users already exist, Software Provisioning Manager prompts you for the existing password, except if the password of these users is the same as the master password. 	
	• Make sure that the user ID and group ID of these operating system users are unique and the same on each relevant application server instance host.	
	The sapinst_instdir directory belongs to a group named sapinst. If this group is not available, it is created automatically as a local group. For security reasons, we recommend removing the operating system users from the group sapinst after the execution of the installer has completed.	
	During the <i>Define Parameters</i> phase of the installer, you can specify that the operating system users are to be removed automatically from the group sapinst after the execution of the installer has completed.	
	For more information about the group sapinst, see Creating Operating System Users and Groups [page 46].	
	For more information about the sapinst_instdir directory, see Useful Infor- mation about Software Provisioning Manager [page 69].	

2.2.4.1 Database Roles and Users

The Identity Management database uses the following roles, which are assigned to users:

Database Roles and Users

Roles	Logins	Database	Description
db_owner	<prefix>_oper</prefix>	SAP ASE	This user is the owner of the database. This user has permission to modify the ta- ble structure of the database. The purpose of this user is to delegate database admin-

Roles	Logins	Database	Description
	<prefix>_OPER</prefix>	Oracle	istration without distributing
		IBM DB2	the password to the SYSTEM user. For security reasons, this role should only be used when updating the database schema.
<prefix>_admin_role</prefix>	<prefix>_oper</prefix>	SAP ASE	This role is used as login for
	<prefix>_admin</prefix>		the REST server for Identity Management Developer Stu-
<prefix>_ADMIN_ROLE</prefix>	<prefix>_ADMIN</prefix>	Oracle	dio. For security reasons, no
		IBM DB2	this role.
<prefix>_rt_role</prefix>	<prefix>_oper</prefix>	SAP ASE	This role is used by the run-
	<prefix>_rt</prefix>		time engine and is configured by the Dispatcher Utility.
<prefix>_RT_ROLE</prefix>	<prefix>_RT</prefix>	Oracle	
		IBM DB2	
<prefix>_prov_role</prefix>	<prefix>_oper</prefix>	SAP ASE	This role is used as login
	<prefix>_prov</prefix>		for the Identity Management User Interface.
<prefix>_PROV_ROLE</prefix>	<prefix>_PROV</prefix>	Oracle	
		IBM DB2	
<prefix>_USER_ROLE</prefix>	<prefix>_USER</prefix>	IBM DB2	This role can view jobs and groups in Identity Manage- ment, but is not allowed to change any information, ex- cept for scheduling informa- tion.

For more information, see Identity Center Database Logins and Roles in SAP Identity Management Security Guide.

Related Information

Identity Center Database Logins and Roles Creating and Configuring Dispatchers [page 105]

2.2.5 SAP Identity Management System Directories

Here you find information about the required directories for the SAP Identity Management system and the required disk space.

Related Information

System Directories on UNIX [page 44]

2.2.5.1 System Directories on UNIX

Depending on the installation option you have chosen, Software Provisioning Manager automatically creates the directories listed in the following graphics and tables.

Before running the installation, you have to set up the required file systems manually. In addition, you have to make sure that the required disk space for the directories to be installed is available on the relevant hard disks.





Software Provisioning Manager creates the following types of directories:

- Physically shared directories
- Logically shared directories
- Local directories

HP-UX: For recommendations about block size and mount option configuration, see SAP Note 1077887.

Software Provisioning Manager prompts you only for the <sapmnt> directory during the installation.

Directory	Description	Required Mini- mum Disc Space
/ <sapmnt>/<sapsid></sapsid></sapmnt>	SAP mount directory	0.5 GB
	This directory is recommended to reside on the database host of the SAP Identity Management system.	
	The directory / <sapmnt>/<sapsid>, which contains SAP kernel and re- lated files, is created on the first installation host, the SAP global host. Normally, the first installation host is the host on which the SAP Identity Management Core component instance is to run, but you can also choose another host for /<sapmnt>/<sapsid>.</sapsid></sapmnt></sapsid></sapmnt>	
	You need to manually share this directory with Network File System (NFS) and – for a distributed system such as a high-availability system or a system with additional application server instances – mount it from the other installation hosts.	
	• global Contains globally shared data	
	 profile Contains the profiles of all instances 	
	• exe	
	• Contains a folder up and a folder nuc, each with a platform-spe- cific subfolder:	
	 <sapmnt>/<sapsid>/exe/uc/<platform> is used in Unicode systems.</platform></sapsid></sapmnt> Executable kernel programs are replicated from this directory to the exe directories of each Unicode system instance. 	
	<pre>• <sapmnt>/<sapsid>/exe/nuc/<platform> is used in non-Unicode systems (see below).</platform></sapsid></sapmnt></pre>	
	Executable kernel programs are replicated from this direc- tory to the exe directories of each non-Unicode system in- stance (see below).	
	• Contains a folder jvm with the SAP JVM files	
/usr/sap/ <sapsid>/</sapsid>	Instance directory of the SAP Identity Management Dispatcher instance	2.0 GB
IDM <instance_number></instance_number>	The dispatcher instance directory contains the log, data, work, exe, and Identity_Center subdirectories.	

Directory	Description	Required Mini- mum Disc Space
/usr/sap/ <sapsid>/ VDS<instance_number></instance_number></sapsid>	Virtual Directory Server instance The virtual directory server instance directory contains the log, data, work, exe, and VDS subdirectories.	1.5 GB
/usr/sap/ <sapsid>/SYS</sapsid>	This directory contains the following symbolic links to physically shared directories:	1.0 GB
	 Symbolic link profile points to /<sapmnt>/<sapsid>/profile</sapsid></sapmnt> Symbolic link global points to /<sapmnt>/<sapsid>/global</sapsid></sapmnt> 	
	This directory contains the exe subdirectory with symbolic links pointing to the corresponding subdirectories of $///exe$.	

Related Information

SAP Identity Management System Directories [page 44]

2.3 Preparing for SAP Identity Management Installation

This section describes the preparation phase of SAP Identity Management installation.

Related Information

Exporting and Mounting Global Directories [page 50] Creating Operating System Users and Groups [page 46]

2.3.1 Creating Operating System Users and Groups

During the installation, the software provisioning manager checks all required accounts (users, groups) and services on the local machine. The software provisioning manager checks whether the required users and groups already exist. If not, it creates new users and groups as necessary.

The sapinst_instdir directory belongs to a group named sapinst. If this group is not available, it is created automatically as a local group.

If you do not want the software provisioning manager to create operating system users, groups, and services automatically, you can optionally create them **before** the installation is started. This might be the case if you use central user management such as Network Information System (NIS).

For distributed installations, unless you are using global accounts or NIS, you must create the target users automatically using the software provisioning manager or manually on the operating system, before starting the installation :

The user ID (UID) and group ID (GID) of SAP users and groups must be identical for all servers belonging to an SAP system.

This does not mean that all users and groups have to be installed on all SAP servers.

The software provisioning manager checks if the required services are available on the host and creates them if necessary. See the log messages about the service entries and adapt the network-wide (NIS) entries accordingly.

The software provisioning manager checks the NIS users, groups, and services using NIS commands. However, the software provisioning manager does **not** change NIS configurations.

→ Recommendation

For a distributed or a high-availability system, we recommend that you distribute account information (operating system users and groups) over the network, for example by using Network Information Service (NIS).

If you want to use global accounts that are configured on a separate host, you can do this in one of the following ways:

You start the software provisioning manager and choose Generic Installation Options <Database>
 Preparation Operating System Users and Groups .

For more information, see Running Software Provisioning Manager [page 64].

• You create operating system users and groups manually. Check the settings for these operating system users.

User Settings

- Oracle Solaris: If your operating system is Oracle Solaris 10 or higher, follow the parameter recommendations for SAP applications in SAP Note 724713 .
- AIX: Make sure that you have set the limits for operating system users as described in SAP Note 323816
- HP-UX, Oracle Solaris: Make sure that you have set the limits listed below for operating system users root, <sapsid>adm, and your database-specific operating system users.
 Linux: Starting with SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 15, Red Hat Enterprise Linux 8, and Oracle Linux 8, and the respective SAP kernel patch levels, native support for the software suite systemd for Linux is available for SAP systems. If you use Linux with systemd, ignore the following procedures for setting limits because there's no need to change the limits. Make sure that polkit is installed. systemd requires polkit for

authorization checks for the <sapsid>adm user. For more information about Linux with systemd, see SAP Note 3139184¹/₂.

If you are still using a Linux version or an SAP kernel patch that is not released for native systemd support with SAP systems (see 3139184), proceed as follows: Make sure that you have set the limits as outlined below for operating system users root, <sapsid>adm, and your database-specific operating system users .

▲ Caution

Caution: the limit mechanism supports hard and soft limits. The soft limit cannot be bigger than the hard limit. The hard limit can be set/increased by the root user like: limit -h <new_value>, for example limit -h datasize unlimited.

• Using csh shell, the output of command limit needs to be at least as follows:

Example

The following table lists example output taken from SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 11 (x86_64).

Output	Properties
cputime	unlimited
filesize	unlimited
datasize	unlimited
stacksize	8192 KB
coredumpsize	unlimited
descriptors	8192
memoryuse	unlimited

Using sh or ksh shell, the output of command ulimit -a needs to be at least as follows:

- Example				
The following table lists example output taken from SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 11 (x86_64).				
Output sn	Output ksh	Properties		
cpu time (seconds)	cpu time (seconds)	unlimited		
file size (blocks)	file size (blocks)	unlimited		
data seg size (kbytes)	data size (Kibytes)	unlimited		
stack size (kbytes)	stack size (Kibytes)	8192 KB		

Output sh	Output ksh	Properties
core file size (blocks)	core file size (blocks)	unlimited
open files	nofile	8192
max memory size (kbytes)	max memory size (Kibytes)	unlimited

- All users **must** have identical environment settings. Any change to the environment such as variables, or paths is at your own responsibility.
- If you have multiple operating system users with user ID (UID) O, you must assign the sapinst group to all of them.
- Do **not** delete any shell initialization scripts in the home directory of the operating system users. This applies even if you do not intend to use the shells that these scripts are for.
- If you create operating system users manually or use already existing operating system users, make sure that the home directory for each of these users is **not** the root directory (/).
- Make sure that the home directory of user adm is not critical for recursive changes on permissions. When operating system users are created by the software provisioning manager, the permissions on the home directories of these users are changed recursively. This can cause unpredictable errors if you define a critical home directory.

For example, the home directory must **not** be / or /usr/sap.

• **HP-UX:** To prevent terminal query errors in the adm environment, comment out the line eval 'tset -s -Q -m ':?hp' in the /etc/skel/.login script. For more information, see SAP Note 1038842⁴/.

Operating System Users and Groups

If you have multiple operating system users with user ID (UID) 0, you must assign the sapinst group to all of them.

→ Recommendation

For security reasons, we recommend that you remove the operating system users from the group sapinst **after** the software provisioning manager has completed.

We recommend that you specify this "cleanup" already during the *Define Parameters* phase on the *Cleanup Operating System Users* screen. Then, the removal of the operating system users from the group sapinst is done automatically.

Users and Their Groups

User	Primary Group	Additional Groups	Comment
root	No primary group assigned by Software Provisioning Manager.	sapinst	Superuser of the UNIX operat- ing system
<sapsid>adm</sapsid>	sapsys	sapinst	SAP system administrator

User	Primary Group	Additional Groups	Comment
sapadm	sapsys	-	SAP Host Agent administrator

2.3.2 Exporting and Mounting Global Directories

If you install a database or an additional application server instance on a host other than the SAP global host, mount global directories from the SAP global host.

Prerequisites

If you want to install the executables locally instead of sharing them, do **not** mount the exe directory with Network File System (NFS). Instead, create <sapmnt>/<sApsild>/exe as a local directory (not a link) with a minimum of 1.5 GB free space.

Context

There is no need to create the directories before the installation when you install a primary application server instance. The global directories must be exported only if you install additional application server instances.

Choose one of the following ways to proceed, depending on whether you are performing a homogeneous or heterogeneous installation:

Procedure

- Exporting and Mounting Global Directories for a Homogeneous Installation
 - a. Log on to the SAP global host as user root and export the following directories with read/write access for the root user to the host where you want to install the new instance:

<sapmnt>/<SAPSID>/exe

<sapmnt>/<SAPSID>/profile

<sapmnt>/<SAPSID>/global

Make sure that the user root of the host where you want to install the new instance can access the exported directories.

- b. Log on to the host of the new instance that you want to install as user root.
- c. Create the following mount points and mount them from the SAP global host:

<sapmnt>/<SAPSID>/exe

<sapmnt>/<SAPSID>/profile

<sapmnt>/<SAPSID>/global

Make sure that the mount points under /<sapmnt>/<SAPSID>/ are permanent. Otherwise, automatic start of the instance services does not work when you reboot the system.

• Exporting and Mounting Global Directories for a Heterogeneous Installation

a. Log on to the SAP global host as user root and export the following directories with root access to the host on which you want to install the new instance:

<sapmnt>/<SAPSID>/exe

<sapmnt>/<SAPSID>/profile

<sapmnt>/<SAPSID>/global

- b. Log on to the host of the new instance as user root.
- c. Create the following mount points and mount them from the SAP global host:

<sapmnt>/<SAPSID>/exe

<sapmnt>/<SAPSID>/profile

<sapmnt>/<SAPSID>/global

Make sure that these mount points are permanent. Otherwise automatic start of the instance services does not work when you reboot the system.

Related Information

Exporting and Mounting Directories via NFS for Linux [page 53] Exporting and Mounting Directories via NFS for AIX [page 52] Exporting and Mounting Directories via NFS for Oracle Solaris [page 54] Exporting and Mounting Directories via NFS for HP-UX [page 53]

2.3.2.1 Exporting and Mounting Directories via NFS

Related Information

Exporting and Mounting Directories via NFS for Linux [page 53]

Exporting and Mounting Directories via NFS for AIX [page 52] Exporting and Mounting Directories via NFS for Oracle Solaris [page 54] Exporting and Mounting Directories via NFS for HP-UX [page 53]

2.3.2.1.1 Exporting and Mounting Directories via NFS for AIX

This procedure describes how to export and mount directories via NFS for AIX using the command line.

Context

This section only provides the basic procedure. If you need more detailed information, check your OS vendor's documentation.

Procedure

- To export an NFS filesystem, do the following steps:
 - a. Take the backup of the exports file:

cp -p /etc/exports /etc/exports_bak

b. Create an entry for each directory to be exported, using the full path name of the directory:

vi /etc/exports

c. Read the /etc/exports file and export all the directories listed:

exportfs -a

d. Confirm the exported directory listed:

showmount -e

e. Confirm the nfs client name and directory list:

showmount -a

- Mounting the NFS filesystem on the client:
 - a. Verify if the NFS server has exported the directory.

showmount -e <server_name>

b. Create the mounting directory if not already exist.

mkdir /local_directory

c. Mount the remote directory on the client:

mount <ServerName>:/<remote_directory> /<local_directory>

d. Confirm that the NFS filesystem has been mounted:

df -gt <NFS mount_name>

2.3.2.1.2 Exporting and Mounting Directories via NFS for HP-UX

This section describes how to export and mount directories via NFS for HP-UX manually.

Context

This section only provides the basic procedure. If you need more detailed information, check your OS vendor's documentation.

Procedure

- 1. On the host where you want to **export** directories do the following:
 - a. Add the file system that you want to export to the file /etc/dfs/dfstab using the following syntax:

share -F nfs -o root= <client_1>:<client_n> access= <client_1>:<client_n>
<file system to share>

share -F nfs -o root=hw5111:hw5115, access=hw511:hw5115 /sapmnt/C11/exe.

If you encounter problems, try using the FQDN (Fully Qualified Domain Name).

b. To make the file system available to NFS clients, enter the following command:

/usr/sbin/shareall

- 2. On the host where you want to **mount** the directories you exported in the previous step, do the following:
 - a. Add the remote file system to /etc/fstab.

hw5115:/sapmnt/C11 /sapmnt/C11 nfs defaults 0 0

b. Mount the file system.

mount -a

2.3.2.1.3 Exporting and Mounting Directories via NFS for Linux

To export directories via NFS, perform the following steps.

Context

The following procedure assumes that the central instance host is the NFS server.

Procedure

• To export and mount directories via NFS, consult the documentation of your Linux vendor.

2.3.2.1.4 Exporting and Mounting Directories via NFS for Oracle Solaris

To mount directories via NFS from the host where the directory resides that you want to mount, log on as user root and proceed as follows.

Context

This section only provides the basic procedure. If you need more detailed information, check your OS vendor's documentation.

Procedure

- On the host on which the directory to be mounted resides:
 - a. Enter the following command:

/usr/sbin/share

b. To add file systems shared via NFS, edit file /etc/dfs/dfstab:

vi /etc/dfs/dfstab

Add the following line for each file system:

share -F nfs -o root=<nfsclient1>:<nfsclient2>,anon=0 -d "description"
<file_system_to_be_shared>

i Note

Depending on your configuration, a full qualified name may be required for nfsclient, for example, myclient.mydomain.com.

After your SAP system has been installed successfully, in the above line you have to change **-o root** to **-o rw** (or remove **anon=0**, respectively) for all exported directories:

share -F nfs -o rw=<nfsclient1>:<nfsclient2> -d "description"
<file_system_to_be_shared>

c. If the /etc/dfs/dfstab was empty, the NFS server is not active.

- On Solaris 9, start the NFS server with the following command: /etc/init.d/nfs.server start
- On Solaris 10, start the NFS server with the following command: svcadm enable svc:/network/nfs/server:default
- d. To see if the NFS server is active and which partitions are mountable, enter the command:

```
showmount -e <NFS-server>
```

- On the host on which the additional instance runs:
 - a. If you are mounting NFS disks for the first time, the NFS client software is not active.
 - On Solaris 9, start the NFS server with the following command: /etc/init.d/nfs.client start
 - On Solaris 10, start the NFS server with the following command: svcadm enable svc:/network/nfs/client:default
 - b. Edit the file /etc/vfstab to mount the directory:

Edit the file /etc/vfstab to mount the directory:

```
vi /etc/vfstab
```

Add the following line for each file system:

```
<host_name_where_directory_resides>:<file_system_to_be_shared> - <mount
point> nfs - yes -
```

If the mount point exists, mount <file_system_to_be_shared> with the command:

mount <mount point>

2.3.3 Preparing the Installation Media

This section describes how to prepare the installation media.

Installation media are available as follows:

- The Software Provisioning Manager archive containing the installer. You always have to download the latest version of the Software Provisioning Manager archive.
- The dedicated installation archives (SAR files) containing the software to be installed, which are available as follows:
 - You can use the physical installation media as part of the installation package as described in *Using the Physical Media from the Installation Package*.
 - You can download the required **installation archives** (SAR files), as described in *Downloading Specific Installation Archives* (*Archive-Based Installation*).

→ Recommendation

We recommend that you always download the latest patch level of SAP Identity Management components from the SAP Software Download Center.

For more information about which kernel version to use, see SAP Note 1680045⁽²⁾. In addition, check the Product Availability Matrix at: http://support.sap.com/pam⁽²⁾.

Related Information

Downloading and Extracting the Software Provisioning Manager 1.0 Archive [page 56] Using Physical Media from the Installation Package [page 58] Downloading Specific Installation Archives (Archive-Based Installation) [page 59]

2.3.3.1 Downloading and Extracting the Software Provisioning Manager 1.0 Archive

You must always download and extract the software provisioning manager 1.0 archive from the SAP Software Download Center because you must use the latest version.

Prerequisites

- Make sure that you are logged on as a user with root authorizations, and that the download directory has at least the permissions 755.
- Make sure that you use the **latest** version of the SAPCAR tool when manually extracting the software provisioning manager archive. You need the SAPCAR tool to be able to unpack and verify software component archives (*.SAR files). *.SAR is the format of software lifecycle media and tools that you can download from the SAP Software Download Center.

i Note

An older SAPCAR version might extract archive files in a wrong way and this could prevent the software provisioning manager from working consistently.

Proceed as follows to get the latest version of the SAPCAR tool:

- Go to https://launchpad.support.sap.com/#/softwarecenter SUPPORT PACKAGES & PATCHES > By Category > SAP TECHNOLOGY COMPONENTS > SAPCAR].
- 2. Select the SAPCAR for your operating system and download it to an empty directory.
- 3. Even if you have the latest SAPCAR already available, we strongly recommend that you verify its digital signature anyway, unless you downloaded it directly from https://launchpad.support.sap.com/#/ softwarecenter/ yourself. You can do this by verifying the checksum of the downloaded SAPCAR tool:
 - 1. Depending on what operating system you are using, compute a hash of the downloaded SAPCAR tool, using the SHA-256 algorithm used by SAP.
 - 2. Now verify the digital signature of the downloaded SAPCAR tool by comparing the hash with the checksum (generated by SAP using the SHA-256 algorithm) from the *Content Info* button in the *Related Info* column on the right-hand side of the place where you downloaded the SAPCAR tool.

4. To improve usability, we recommend that you rename the executable to **sapcar**.

For more information about SAPCAR, see SAP Note 212876

Procedure

1. Download the latest version of the Software Provisioning Manager 1.0 archive SWPM10SP<Support_Package_Number>_<Version_Number>.SAR:

https://support.sap.com/sltoolset >> System Provisioning >> Download Software Provisioning Manager

- 2. Using the latest version of SAPCAR, you can verify the digital signature of the downloaded SWPM10SP<Support_Package_Number>_<Version_Number>.SAR archive as follows:
 - a. Get the latest version of the SAPCRYPTOLIB archive to your installation host as follows:
 - Go to https://launchpad.support.sap.com/#/softwarecenter SUPPORT PACKAGES & PATCHES and search for "sapcryptolib".
 - 2. Select the archive file for your operating system and download it to the same directory where you have put the SAPCAR executable.
 - 3. Use the following command to extract the SAPCRYPTOLIB archive to the same directory where you have put the SAPCAR executable:

```
SAPCAR -xvf sapcryptolibp_84...sar -R <target directory>
```

- 4. Download the Certificate Revocation List from https://tcs.mysap.com/crl/crlbag.p7s and move it to the same directory.
- b. Verify the digital signature of the downloaded SWPM10SP<Support_Package_Number>_<Version_Number>.SAR archive by executing the following command:

i Note

Check SAP Notes 2178665 and 1680045 whether additional information is available.

```
/<Path to SAPCAR>/SAPCAR -tvVf <Path to Download Directory>/
SWPM10SP<Support_Package_Number>_<Version_Number>.SAR -crl<file name of
revocation list>
```

3. Unpack the Software Provisioning Manager archive to a local directory using the following command:

/<Path to SAPCAR>/sapcar -xvf <Path to Download Directory>/
SWPM10SP<Support_Package_Number>_<Version_Number>.SAR -R <Path to Unpack
Directory>

i Note

Make sure that all users have at least read permissions for the directory to which you unpack the Software Provisioning Manager archive.

Make sure that you unpack the Software Provisioning Manager archive to a dedicated folder. Do not unpack it to the same folder as other installation media.

2.3.3.2 Using Physical Media from the Installation Package

Context

You use the physical installation media as part of the installation package.

Procedure

1. Identify the required media for your installation as listed below.

SAP Identity Management Instance Instal- lation	Required Software Packages from Installation Media
SAP Identity Management Core	 Software Provisioning Manager archive UC Kernel (folder K_<version>_U_<os>) where U means Unicode.</os></version> SAP IDENTITY MANAGEMENT 8.0
SAP Identity Management Dispatcher in- stance	 Software Provisioning Manager archive UC Kernel (folder K_<version>_U_<os>) where U means Unicode.</os></version> SAP IDENTITY MANAGEMENT 8.0
Virtual Direc- tory Server in- stance of SAP Identity Man- agement	 Software Provisioning Manager archive UC Kernel (folder K_<version>_U_<os>) where U means Unicode.</os></version> SAP IDENTITY MANAGEMENT 8.0
Additional SAP Identity Man- agement com- ponents	 Software Provisioning Manager archive UC Kernel (folder K_<version>_<u>_<os>) where U means Unicode.</os></u></version> SAP IDENTITY MANAGEMENT 8.0

2. Make the installation media available on each installation host as follows:

a. Download the latest version of the Software Provisioning Manager archive from:

http://support.sap.com/swdc level Support Packages and Patches A – Z Index S SL Toolset SL Toolset <Release> Entry by Component Software Provisioning Manager Software Provisioning Manager I.0 Support Package Patches <0.5>

b. Unpack the Software Provisioning Manager 1.0 archive as described in Downloading and Extracting the Software Provisioning Manager 1.0 Archive [page 56].

c. Make the media containing the software to be installed available on each installation host.

You can do this in one of the following ways:

- Copy the required media folders directly to the installation hosts.
- Mount the media on a central media server that can be accessed from the installation hosts.

If you copy the media to disk, make sure that the paths to the destination location of the copied media do not contain any blanks.

i Note

The signature of media is checked **automatically** by the installer during the *Define Parameters* phase while the *Media Browser* screens are processed (see also Running Software Provisioning Manager [page 64]). As of now the installer only accepts media whose signature has been checked. For more information, see SAP Note 2393060^(*).

2.3.3.3 Downloading Specific Installation Archives (Archive-Based Installation)

You can download the specificly required installation archives for your SAP Identity Management system installation. During the installation, you can either specify the path to each archive separately, or provide the path to a download basket with all downloaded archives.

Procedure

- 1. Download and unpack the latest version of Software Provisioning Manager as described in Downloading and Extracting the Software Provisioning Manager 1.0 Archive [page 56].
- Download the latest patch level of SAP Identity Management installation archives from: https://support.sap.com/swdc level Software Downloads Support Packages & Patches Browse our Download Catalog By Category SAP NetWeaver and complementary products SAP NW IDENTITY MANAGEMENT SAP IDENTITY MANAGEMENT 8.0 COMPRISED SOFTWARE COMPONENT VERSIONS

→ Recommendation

We recommend that you always download the latest patch level of SAP Identity Management components from the SAP Software Download Center.

- ICCORE<Version>.SAR
- IDMREST<Version>.SAR
- ICRUNTIME<Version>.SAR

- IDMPORTALCONT<Version>.SAR
- IDMCLMRESTAPI<Version>.SAR
- IDMFEDERATION<Version>.SAR
- IDMIC<Version>.SAR
- IDMUI5<Version>.SAR
- VDSERVER<Version>.SAR

During the installation, you can either specify the path to each archive separately, or provide the path to a download basket with all downloaded archives.

3. Download the specifically required installation archives for your SAP Identity Management system installation.

• SAPEXE<Version>.SAR

Download the latest patch level of SAPEXE.SAR from: http://support.sap.com/swdc Software Downloads Support Packages and Patches Browse our Download Catalog By Category Additional Components SAP Kernel SAP KERNEL 64-BIT UNICODE SAP KERNEL 7.45 64-BIT UNICODE or SAP KERNEL 7.49 64-BIT UNICODE Select your operating system #Database independent

• SAPHOSTAGENT<Version>.SAR

• SAPJVM8_<Version>.SAR

Download the latest patch level of SAPJVM8_<Version>.SAR from SAP Note 1442124 Choose the location specified for SAP JVM 8.1.

During the installation, you can either specify the path to each archive separately, or provide the path to a download basket with all downloaded archives.

2.4 Installing SAP Identity Management

This section describes the installation phase of SAP Identity Management.

Related Information

Prerequisites for Running Software Provisioning Manager [page 61]

Running Software Provisioning Manager [page 64] Additional Information About Software Provisioning Manager [page 69] Installing the Identity Management Developer Studio [page 77]

2.4.1 Prerequisites for Running Software Provisioning Manager

Make sure you fulfil the following prerequisites before running the software provisioning manager.

- For the SL-UI, make sure that the following web browser requirements are met:
 - You have one of the following supported browsers on the device where you want to run the SL-UI:
 - Google Chrome (recommended)
 - Mozilla Firefox
 - Microsoft Edge
 - Microsoft Internet Explorer 11 or higher.
 - Always use the latest version of these web browsers.
 - If you copy the SL-UI URL manually in the browser window, make sure that you open a new Web browser window in private browsing mode (Internet Explorer), incognito mode (Chrome) or private browsing mode (Firefox). This is to prevent Web browser plugins and settings from interfering with the SL-UI.

The software provisioning manager uses a self-signed certificate, which is used temporarily only while the software provisioning manager is running. This certificate is not trusted by the browser unless it is imported manually by the user running the software provisioning manager. This behavior is intentionally designed in this way because - unlike ordinary public web servers - the software provisioning manager has different usage patterns. You must configure your browser do trust the self-issued certificate of the software provisioning manager after carefully performing the "thumbprint" verification described in Running Software Provisioning Manager [page 64]. For more information about adding trusted certificates, see the documentation of your browser.

For more information about the SL-UI, see Useful Information about Software Provisioning Manager [page 69].

- The software provisioning manager uses shell scripts to obtain the environment for user adm.
 - If user adm does not yet exist, a working /bin/csh must be available on the host where you run the software provisioning manager. For more information about recommended login shells, see SAP Note 202227^(b).
 - If already exists and uses csh, before you start the software provisioning manager, execute the following command as user to make sure that the csh scripts are up-to-date, depending on your UNIX OS platform:

/bin/csh -c "source /home/adm/.cshrc;env" Of /bin/csh -c "source / home/adm/.login;env"

• Make sure that your operating system does not delete the contents of the temporary directory /tmp or the contents of the directories to which the variables TEMP, TMP, or TMPDIR point, for example by using a crontab entry.

Make sure that the temporary directory has the permissions 755.

Make sure that you have at least 700 MB of free space in the installation directory for each installation option. In addition, you need 700 MB free space for the software provisioning manager executables. If you cannot provide 700 MB free space in the temporary directory, you can set one of the environment variables TEMP, TMP, or TMPDIR to another directory with 700 MB free space for the software provisioning manager executables.

You can set values for the TEMP, TMP, or TMPDIR environment variable to an alternative installation directory as described in section Useful Information about Software Provisioning Manager [page 69].

Make sure that umask is set to 022 for the user with root permissions that you want to use for running the software provisioning manager.
 As the user with root permissions that you want to use for running the software provisioning manager.

As the user with root permissions that you want to use for running the software provisioning manager, enter the following command: **umask 022**

- AIX: Make sure that you have set the limits for operating system users as described in SAP Note 323816
- Linux: On Linux, starting with SLES 15, RHEL 8 and Oracle Linux 8, and respective recent SAP kernel patch levels, there is native integration into systemd. In this case, limits for operating system users root, <sapsid>adm, and your database-specific operating system users do not need to be set any longer. Make sure that polkit is installed. systemd requires polkit for authorization checks for the <sapsid>adm user. For older Linux versions and SAP kernel patch levels, however, you must still set these limits. For more information about how to proceed for older Linux versions, see the following instructions. For more information about Linux with systemd and the relevant SAP kernel patch levels, see SAP Note 3139184.
 HP-UX, Oracle-Solaris, Linux (versions lower than SLES 15, RHEL 8 and Oracle Linux 8 or lower SAP kernel patch levels): Make sure that you have set the limits for operating system users root, <sapsid>adm, and your database-specific operating system users (see also sections Creating Operating System Users and Groups [page 46] and Running Software Provisioning Manager [page 64].

Caution: the limit mechanism supports hard- and soft-limits. The soft-limit cannot be bigger than the hard-limit. The hard-limit can be set/increased by the root user like: limit -h <limit> <new_value>, for example limit -h datasize unlimited.

• Using csh shell, the output of command limit needs to be at least as follows:

Example

The following table lists example output taken from SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 15 (x86_64).

Output	Properties
cputime	unlimited
filesize	unlimited
datasize	unlimited
stacksize	8192 KB
coredumpsize	unlimited

Output	Properties
descriptors	8192
memoryuse	unlimited

• Using sh or ksh shell, the output of command ulimit -a needs to be at least as follows:

🗣 Example

The following table lists example output taken from SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 15 (x86_64).

Output sh	Output ksh	Properties
cpu time (seconds)	cpu time (seconds)	unlimited
file size (blocks)	file size (blocks)	unlimited
data seg size (kbytes)	data size (Kibytes)	unlimited
stack size (kbytes)	stack size (Kibytes)	8192 KB
core file size (blocks)	core file size (blocks)	unlimited
open files	nofile	8192
max memory size (kbytes)	max memory size (Kibytes)	unlimited

- Make sure that the following ports are not used by other processes:
 - Port 4237 is used by default as HTTPS port for communication between the software provisioning manager and the SL-UI.

If this port cannot be used, you can assign a free port number by executing sapinst with the following command line parameter:

SAPINST_HTTPS_PORT=<Free Port Number>

• Port 4239 is used by default for displaying the feedback evaluation form at the end of the software provisioning manager processing.

The filled-out evaluation form is then sent to SAP using HTTPS.

If this port cannot be used, you can assign a free port number by executing sapinst with the following command line parameter:

SAPINST_HTTP_PORT=<Free Port Number>

2.4.2 Running Software Provisioning Manager

This section describes how to run the software provisioning manager.

Prerequisites

For more information, see Prerequisites for Running Software Provisioning Manager [page 61].

Context

The software provisioning manager has a web browser-based GUI named "SL-UI of the software provisioning manager" - "SL-UI" for short.

This procedure describes an installation where you run the software provisioning manager and use the SL-UI, that is you can control the processing of the software provisioning manager from a browser running on any device.

For more information about the SL-UI, see Useful Information about Software Provisioning Manager [page 69].

Procedure

1. Log on to the installation host as a user with root permissions.

▲ Caution

Make sure that the user with root permissions that you want to use for running the software provisioning manager has not set any environment variables for a different SAP system or database.

If your security policy requires that the person running the software provisioning manager is not allowed to know the credentials of a user with root permissions on the installation host, you can specify another operating system user for authentication purposes. You do this using the SAPINST_REMOTE_ACCESS_USER parameter when starting the sapinst executable from the command line. You must confirm that the user is a trusted one. For more information, see SAP Note 1745524¹/₂.

2. Start the software provisioning manager from the directory to which you unpacked the Software Provisioning Manager archive by entering the following command:

<Path_To_Unpack_Directory>/sapinst

i Note

<Path_To_Unpack_Directory>/sapinst SAPINST_USE_HOSTNAME=<Virtual_Host_Name>

3. The software provisioning manager now starts and waits for the connection with the SL-UI.

You can find the URL you require to access the SL-UI at the bottom of the shell from which you are running the software provisioning manager.

i Note

If the host specified by <hostname> cannot be reached due to a special network configuration, proceed as follows:

- 1. Terminate the software provisioning manager as described in Useful Information about Software Provisioning Manager [page 69].
- Restart the software provisioning manager from the command line with the SAPINST_GUI_HOSTNAME=<hostname> property. You can use a fully-qualified host name.

If you have a supported web browser (see Prerequisites for Running Software Provisioning Manager [page 61]) installed on the host where you run the software provisioning manager, you can open this URL directly in the shell. Otherwise, open the URL in a supported web browser that runs on another device.

After opening the browser URL, make sure that the URL in the browser starts with "https://" to avoid security risks such as SSL stripping .

Before you reach the *Welcome* screen, your browser warns you that the certificate of the sapinst process on this computer could not be verified.

Proceed as follows to avoid security risks such as a man-in-the-middle attack:

- 1. Click on the certificate area on the left hand side in the address bar of your browser, and view the certificate.
- Open the certificate fingerprint or thumbprint, and compare all hexadecimal numbers to the ones displayed in the console output of the software provisioning manager.
 Proceed as follows to get the certificate fingerprint or thumbprint from the server certificate printed in the software provisioning manager console:
 - Go to the sapinst_exe.xxxxx directory in the temporary directory to which the software provisioning manager has extracted itself: <User_Home>/.sapinst/
 - 2. In the sapinst_exe.xxxxx directory, execute the sapgenpse tool with the command line option get_my_name -p.

As a result, you get the server fingerprint or thumbprint from the server certificate.

3. Accept the warning to inform your browser that it can trust this site, even if the certificate could not be verified.

The SL-UI opens in the browser by displaying the *Welcome* screen.

4. On the *Welcome* screen, choose the required option:

To install an SAP Identity Management system, choose SAP Identity Management 8.0 Installation . You can install the following system variants and additional components:

Standard System

This option installs all must-have components of an SAP Identity Management system on one host.

Installation	Description
SAP Identity Management Standard System	 Installs SAP Identity Management 8.0 Core Installs SAP Identity Management 8.0 Dispatcher Instance with Runtime Components Deploys the following required SAP Identity Management components: SAP Identity Management 8.0 Developer Studio Service SAP Identity Management 8.0 User Interface In addition, this option enables you to deploy and install the following optional components: SAP Identity Management 8.0 REST Interface Version 2 SAP Identity Management 8.0 User Interface for HTML5 SAP Identity Management 8.0 Portal Content
	 Identity Federation i Note To be aware of the dependencies and the prerequi-
	sites that must be met before deployment, see Pre- requisites and Dependencies Between Deployable Components [page 28].
	Installation of a Virtual Directory Server instance

Distributed System

The following options are required to install an SAP Identity Management system distributed over several hosts.

Perform the installation options **exactly** in the order they appear. You have to restart the Software Provisioning Manager on the relevant host for each installation option.

Installation	Description
SAP Identity Management Core Components	Installs the SAP Identity Management 8.0 Core on one host.
SAP Identity Management Dispatcher Instance	Installs SAP Identity Management 8.0 Dispatcher In- stance with Runtime Components on this host.

Installation	Description
SAP Identity Management Components on SAP NetWeaver AS Java	Run this option on a host where SAP NetWeaver AS Java is installed and where is at least one AS Java in- stance running.
	This option deploys the following required SAP Identity Management components on this host:
	 SAP Identity Management 8.0 Developer Studio Service SAP Identity Management 8.0 User Interface
	In addition, this option enables you to deploy and install the following optional components:
	SAP Identity Management 8.0 REST Interface Ver- sion 2
	 SAP Identity Management 8.0 User Interface for HTML5
	SAP Identity Management 8.0 Portal ContentIdentity Federation
	i Note
	To be aware of the dependencies and the prerequi- sites that must be met before deployment, see Pre- requisites and Dependencies Between Deployable Components [page 28].

Additional Components

This option installs and deploys additional SAP Identity Management components.

Installation	Description
Additional SAP Identity Management Dispatcher	Installs an SAP Identity Management 8.0 Dispatcher In-
Instance	stance with Runtime Components on this host.
SAP Identity Management Virtual Directory Server	Installs a Virtual Directory Server instance of SAP Iden-
(VDS)	tity Management on this host.

Installation	Description
SAP Identity Management Components on SAP NetWeaver AS Java	Deploys the following SAP Identity Management components on this host:
	 SAP Identity Management 8.0 REST Interface Version 2 SAP Identity Management 8.0 User Interface for HTML SAP Identity Management 8.0 Portal Content Identity Federation
	i Note To be aware of the dependencies and the prerequi- sites that must be met before deployment, see Pre- requisites and Dependencies Between Deployable Components [page 28].

5. Choose Next.

i Note

If there are errors during the self-extraction process of the software provisioning manager, you can find the log file dev_selfex.out in the temporary directory.

6. Follow the instructions on the software provisioning manager screens and enter the required parameters.

$\mathbf{i}\,\mathsf{Note}$

To find more information on each parameter during the *Define Parameters* phase, position the cursor on the required parameter input field, and choose either F1 or the *HELP* tab. Then the available help text is displayed in the *HELP* tab.

The digital signature of installation media and installation archives is checked **automatically** during the *Define Parameters* phase while processing the *Media Browser* and - if you perform an archive-based installation - the *Software Package Browser* screens.

Note that this automatic check is only committed once and **not** repeated if you modify artifacts such as SAR archives or files on the media **after** the initial check has been done. This means that - if you modify artefacts later on either during the remaining *Define Parameters* phase or later on during the *Execute Service* phase - the digital signature is not checked again.

For more information, see SAP Note 2393060/

After you have entered all requested input parameters, the software provisioning manager displays the *Parameter Summary* screen. This screen shows both the parameters that you entered and those that the software provisioning manager set by default. If required, you can revise the parameters before starting the installation.

7. To start the installation, choose *Next*.

The software provisioning manager starts the installation and displays the progress of the installation. When the installation has finished, the software provisioning manager shows the message: Execution of <Option_Name> has completed.

- 8. If required, delete directories with the name sapinst_exe.xxxxx after the software provisioning manager has finished. Sometimes these directories remain in the temporary directory.
- 9. If you copied the software provisioning manager software to your hard disk, you can delete these files when the installation has successfully completed.
- 10. For security reasons, we recommend that you remove the operating system users from the group sapinst **after** you have completed the installation.

\mathbf{i} Note

This step is only required, if you did **not** specify during the *Define Parameters* phase that the operating system users are to be removed from the group sapinst **after** the execution of the software provisioning manager has completed.

11. For security reasons, we recommend that you delete the .sapinst directory within the home directory of the user with which you ran the software provisioning manager:

<User_Home>/.sapinst/

12. The software provisioning manager log files contain IP addresses and User IDs such as the ID of your S-User. For security, data protection, and privacy-related reasons we strongly recommend that you delete these log files once you do not need them any longer.

You find the software provisioning manager log files in the sapinst_instdir directory. For more information, see Useful Information about Software Provisioning Manager [page 69].

2.4.3 Additional Information About Software Provisioning Manager

2.4.3.1 Useful Information about Software Provisioning Manager

This section contains some useful technical background information about the software provisioning manager and the software provisioning manager's SL-UI.

- The software provisioning manager has a framework named "SAPinst". For more information about the current SAPinst Framework version and its features, see SAP Note 3207613 (SAPinst Framework 753 Central Note).
- The software provisioning manager has the web browser-based "SL-UI of the software provisioning manager" "SL-UI" for short.

The SL-UI uses the SAP UI Development Toolkit for HTML5 - also known as SAPUI5 - a client-side HTML5 rendering library based on JavaScript. The benefits of this new user interface technology for the user are:

- Zero foot print, since only a web browser is required on the client
- New controls and functionality, for example, view logs in web browser.

As of version 1.0 SP24 Patch Level (PL) 5, the software provisioning manager comes with a new look and feel of the SL-UI. For more information, see https://blogs.sap.com/2018/11/10/new-look-for-software-provisioning-manager/

The SL-UI connects the web browser on a client with the sapinst executable - which is part of software provisioning manager - running on the installation host using the standard protocol HTTPS.

For the SL-UI the software provisioning manager provides a pre-generated URL at the bottom of the shell from which you are running the software provisioning manager . If you have a supported web browser installed on the host where you run the software provisioning manager, you can start the SL-UI directly from this URL. Otherwise, open a web browser supported by the SL-UI on any device and run the URL from there.

For more information about supported web browsers see Prerequisites for Running Software Provisioning Manager [page 61].

If you need to run the **SL-UI** in **accessibility mode**, apply the standard accessibility functions of your web browser.

As soon as you have started the sapinst executable, the software provisioning manager creates a .sapinst directory underneath the /home/<User> directory where it keeps its log files. <User> is the user with which you have started the software provisioning manager.

After you have reached the *Welcome* screen and selected the relevant software provisioning manager option for the SAP system or instance to be installed, the software provisioning manager creates a directory sapinst_instdir where it keeps its log files, and which is located directly below the temporary directory. The software provisioning manager finds the temporary directory by checking the value of the TEMP, TMP, or TMPDIR environment variable. If no value is set for these variables, the software provisioning manager uses /tmp by **default**.

All log files which have been stored so far in the .sapinst folder are moved to the sapinst_instdir directory as soon as the latter has been created.

If you want the sapinst_instdir directory to be created in another directory than /tmp, set the environment variable TEMP, TMP, or TMPDIR to this directory before you start the software provisioning manager.

Shell Used	Command
Bourne shell (sh)	TEMP= <directory></directory>
	export TEMP
C shell (csh)	setenv TEMP <directory></directory>
Korn shell (ksh)	export TEMP= <directory></directory>

Make sure that the installation directory is not mounted with NFS, or there might be problems when the Java Virtual Machine is started.

The software provisioning manager records its progress in the keydb.xml file located in the sapinst_instdir directory. Therefore, if required, you can continue with the software provisioning manager from any point of failure, without having to repeat the already completed steps and without having to reenter the already processed input parameters. For security reasons, a variable encryption key is generated as soon as the sapinst_instdir directory is created by the software provisioning manager. This key is used to encrypt the values written to the keydb.xml file.

→ Recommendation

We recommend that you keep all installation directories until the system is completely and correctly installed.

• The software provisioning manager extracts itself to the temporary directory. These executables are deleted again after the software provisioning manager has stopped running.

Directories called sapinst_exe.xxxxx sometimes remain in the temporary directory after the software provisioning manager has finished. You can safely delete them.

The temporary directory also contains the log file dev_selfex.out from the self-extraction process of the software provisioning manager, which might be useful if an error occurs.

If the software provisioning manager cannot find a temporary directory, the installation terminates with the error FCO-00058.

• To see a list of all available software provisioning manager properties (command line options) and related documentation, start the software provisioning manager as described above with command line parameter

-p:

./sapinst -p

• If required, stop the software provisioning manager by choosing the *Cancel* button.

i Note

If you need to terminate the software provisioning manager, press Ctrl + C.

2.4.3.2 Restarting Interrupted Processing of Software Provisioning Manager

Here you find information about how to restart the software provisioning manager if its processing has been interrupted.

Context

The processing of the software provisioning manager might be interrupted for one of the following reasons:

- An error occurred during the *Define Parameters* or *Execute* phase: The software provisioning manager does not abort the installation in error situations. If an error occurs, the installation pauses and a dialog box appears. The dialog box contains a short description of the choices listed in the table below as well as a path to a log file that contains detailed information about the error.
- You interrupted the processing of the software provisioning manager by choosing Cancel in the SL-UI.

▲ Caution

If you stop an option in the *Execute* phase, any system or component **installed** by this option is incomplete and not ready to be used. Any system or component **uninstalled** by this option is not completely uninstalled.

The following table describes the options in the dialog box:

Option	Definition
Retry	The software provisioning manager retries the installation from the point of failure without repeating any of the previous steps.
	This is possible because the software provisioning manager records its progress in the keydb.xml file.
	We recommend that you view the entries in the log files, try to solve the problem, and then choose <i>Retry</i> .
	If the same or a different error occurs, the software provisioning manager displays the same dialog box again.
Stop	The software provisioning manager stops the installation, closing the dialog box and the software provisioning manager's SL-UI.
	The software provisioning manager records its progress in the keydb.xml file. Therefore, you can continue with the software provisioning manager from the point of failure without repeating any of the previous steps. See the procedure below.
Continue	The software provisioning manager continues the installation from the current point.
View Log	Access installation log files.
i Note

You can also terminate the software provisioning manager by choosing Ctrl + C but we do **not** recommend this because it kills the process immediately.

The following procedure describes the steps to restart an installation, which you stopped by choosing *Stop*, or to continue an interrupted installation after an error situation.

Procedure

- 1. Log on to the installation host as a user with the required permissions as described in Running Software Provisioning Manager [page 64].
- 2. Make sure that the installation media are still available.

For more information, see Preparing the Installation Media [page 55].

→ Recommendation

Make the installation media available **locally**. For example, if you use remote file shares on other Windows hosts, CIFS shares on third-party SMB-servers, or Network File System (NFS), reading from media mounted with NFS might fail.

i Note

Oracle Solaris: If you mount installation media, make sure that you do this with option **nomaplcase**.

3. Make sure that the installation media are still available.

For more information, see Preparing the Installation Media [page 55].

→ Recommendation

Make the installation media available **locally**. For example, if you use remote file shares on other Windows hosts, CIFS shares on third-party SMB-servers, or Network File System (NFS), reading from media mounted with NFS might fail.

i Note

Oracle Solaris: If you mount installation media, make sure that you do this with option **nomaplcase**.

4. Restart the software provisioning manager from the directory to which you unpacked the Software Provisioning Manager archive by executing the following command:

<Path_To_Unpack_Directory>/sapinst

5. The software provisioning manager is restarting.

You can find the URL you require to access the SL-UI at the bottom of the shell from which you are running the software provisioning manager.

Open your browser and paste the following URL address to access the GUI https://[<hostname>]:4237/sapinst/docs/index.html

i Note

If the host specified by <hostname> cannot be reached due to a special network configuration, proceed as follows:

- 1. Terminate the software provisioning manager as described in Useful Information about Software Provisioning Manager [page 69].
- Restart the software provisioning manager from the command line with the SAPINST_GUI_HOSTNAME=<hostname> property. You can use a fully-qualified host name.

If you have a supported web browser (see Prerequisites for Running Software Provisioning Manager [page 61]) installed on the host where you run the software provisioning manager, you can open this URL directly in the shell. Otherwise, open the URL in a supported web browser that runs on another device.

After opening the browser URL, make sure that the URL in the browser starts with "https://" to avoid security risks such as SSL stripping .

Before you reach the *Welcome* screen, your browser warns you that the certificate of the sapinst process on this computer could not be verified.

Proceed as follows to avoid security risks such as a man-in-the-middle attack:

- 1. Click on the certificate area on the left hand side in the address bar of your browser, and view the certificate.
- Open the certificate fingerprint or thumbprint, and compare all hexadecimal numbers to the ones displayed in the console output of the software provisioning manager.
 Proceed as follows to get the certificate fingerprint or thumbprint from the server certificate printed in the software provisioning manager console:
 - Go to the sapinst_exe.xxxxx directory in the temporary directory to which the software provisioning manager has extracted itself: <User_Home>/.sapinst/
 - 2. In the sapinst_exe.xxxxx directory, execute the sapgenpse tool with the command line option get_my_name -p.

As a result, you get the server fingerprint or thumbprint from the server certificate.

3. Accept the warning to inform your browser that it can trust this site, even if the certificate could not be verified.

The SL-UI opens in the browser by displaying the Welcome screen.

6. From the tree structure on the *Welcome* screen, select the installation option that you want to continue and choose *Next*.

The What do you want to do? screen appears.

7. On the What do you want to do? screen, decide between the following alternatives and continue with Next:

Alternative	Behavior	
Perform a new run	The software provisioning manager does not continue the interrupted installa- tion option. Instead, it moves the content of the old software provisioning man- ager directory and all software provisioning manager-specific files to a backup directory. Afterwards, you can no longer continue the old option.	
	The following naming convention is used for the backup directory:	
	log_ <day>_<month>_<year>_<hours>_<minutes>_<seconds></seconds></minutes></hours></year></month></day>	
	Example log_01_Oct_2016_13_47_56	
	i Note All actions taken by the installation before you stopped it (such as creating directories or users) are not revoked.	
	▲ Caution The software provisioning manager moves all the files and folders to a new log directory, even if these files and folders are owned by other users. If there are any processes currently running on these files and folders, they might no longer function properly.	
Continue with the existing one	The software provisioning manager continues the interrupted installation from the point of failure.	

2.4.3.3 Using the Step State Editor (SAP Support Experts Only)

This section describes how to use the Step State Editor available in the software provisioning manager.

i Note

Only use the Step State Editor if the SAP Support requests you to do so, for example to resolve a customer incident.

Prerequisites

- SAP Support requests you to use the Step State Editor.
- Make sure that the host where you run the software provisioning manager meets the requirements listed in Prerequisites for Running Software Provisioning Manager [page 61].

Procedure

- 1. Start the software provisioning manager from the command line as described in Running Software Provisioning Manager [page 64] with the additional command line parameter SAPINST_SET_STEPSTATE=true
- 2. Follow the instructions on the software provisioning manager screens and fill in the parameters prompted during the *Define Parameters* phase until you reach the *Parameter Summary* screen.
- 3. Choose Next.

The Step State Editor opens as an additional dialog. Within this dialog you see a list of all steps to be executed by the software provisioning manager during the *Execute Service* phase. By default all steps are in an initial state. Underneath each step, you see the assigned software provisioning manager component. For each step you have a *Skip* and a *Break* option.

- Mark the checkbox in front of the *Break* option of the steps where you want the software provisioning manager to pause.
- Mark the checkbox in front of the *Skip* option of the steps which you want the software provisioning manager to skip.
- 4. After you have marked all required steps with either the *Break* or the *Skip* option, choose *OK* on the *Step State Editor* dialog.

The software provisioning manager starts processing the *Execute Service* phase and pauses one after another when reaching each step whose *Break* option you have marked. You can now choose one of the following:

- Choose *OK* to continue with this step.
- Choose *Step State Editor* to return to the *Step State Editor* and make changes, for example you can repeat the step by marking the checkbox in front of the *Repeat* option.
- Choose *Cancel* to abort the software provisioning manager.
- 5. Continue until you have run through all the steps of the *Execute Service* phase of the software provisioning manager.

2.4.3.4 Troubleshooting with Software Provisioning Manager

This section tells you how to proceed when errors occur while the software provisioning manager is running.

Context

If an error occurs, the software provisioning manager:

- Stops processing
- Displays a dialog informing you about the error

Procedure

- 1. Check SAP Note SAP Note 3207613 (SAPinst Framework 753 Central Note) for known software provisioning manager issues.
- 2. If an error occurs during the *Define Parameters* or the *Execute Service* phase, do one of the following:
 - Try to solve the problem:
 - To check the software provisioning manager log files (sapinst.log and sapinst_dev.log) for errors, choose the LOG FILES tab.

i Note

The *LOG FILES* tab is only available if you have selected on the *Welcome* screen the relevant software provisioning manager option for the SAP product to be installed .

If you need to access the log files before you have done this selection, you can find them in the .sapinst directory underneath the /home/<User> directory, where <User> is the user that you used to start the software provisioning manager.

For more information, see Useful Information about Software Provisioning Manager [page 69].

- To check the log and trace files of the software provisioning manager's SL-UI for errors, go to the directory <User_Home>/.sapinst/
- Then continue by choosing *Retry*.
- If required, abort the software provisioning manager by choosing *Cancel* in the tool menu and restart the software provisioning manager. For more information, see Restarting Interrupted Processing of Software Provisioning Manager [page 72].
- 3. If you cannot resolve the problem, report an incident using the appropriate subcomponent of BC-INS*.

For more information about using subcomponents of BC-INS*, see SAP Note 1669327 //

2.4.4 Installing the Identity Management Developer Studio

The SAP Identity Management Developer Studio client is available as an Eclipse plugin. You need to install the Identity Management Developer Studio client on every developer or developer administrator machine.

Prerequisites

- Make sure your 64-bit SAP JVM is version 8.1
- Eclipse version Oxygen is required. We recommend you to choose the following Eclipse Oxygen packages: Eclipse IDE for Java EE Developers or Eclipse IDE for Java Developers.

Context

To install the Identity Management Developer Studio plugin, proceed with the following steps:

Procedure

- 1. In your Eclipse User Interface, select Help Install New Software... from the main menu.
- 2. Specify the repository site where the plugin is available from. Choose *Add...* to the right of the *Work with* field.
- 3. In the *Add Repository* dialog box, enter a descriptive name (for example, SAP Identity Management Developer Studio) in the *Name* field. In the *Location* field, enter the URL the Identity Management Developer Studio plugin for Eclipse is available from. Enter the following URL:
 - https://tools.hana.ondemand.com/oxygen for Eclipse Oxygen (4.7)

Choose OK to add the repository.

- 4. Select the defined repository from the list in the *Work with* field. The plugin for the SAP Identity Management Developer Studio appears in the list by opening the SAP Identity Management Tools.
- 5. Select SAP Identity Management Developer Studio checkbox and then choose Next >.

The installer will calculate the dependencies and installation details for the software, and display these (if any).

- 6. Choose Next >.
- 7. Review the licenses and choose *l* accept the terms of the license agreement.
- 8. Choose Finish.
- 9. You will need to restart Eclipse for the changes to take effect. Choose Yes to restart immediately, or *No* to restart later.
- 10. In the main menu, select Window Perspective Open Perspective Other... and select the perspective SAP Identity Management. Choose OK to open the perspective. If you need to reset the perspective to its default state, choose Tools Reset Perspective.

2.5 Post-Installation Tasks

This section describes the post-installation tasks, which are required before using SAP Identity Management components.

Once you install the SAP Identity Management system, check the post-installation checklist for the required post-installation tasks and perform the initial configuration of SAP Identity Management components.

Related Information

Post-Installation Checklist [page 79]

2.5.1 Post-Installation Checklist

This section describes how you perform post-installation tasks related to separate SAP Identity Management components step by step.

Core Components Tasks

The SAP Identity Management Core component is installed.

Proceed as follows:

- 1. To use the configuration packages, database scripts and some additional components, you need to unpack the Core component [page 81].
- 2. To proceed with some SAP Identity Management database post-installation activities, see the relevant documentation for your database system:
 - Identity Management Database on Oracle [page 82]
 - Identity Management Database on IBM DB2 [page 88]
 - Identity Management Database on SAP ASE [page 93]
- 3. You can also create and maintain the encryption key(s) and the Keys.ini file [page 100]

Runtime Components Tasks

The initial dispatcher is created and started with the <sapsid>adm user. It is set as the default dispatcher. You can manage the initial dispatcher, as described in Creating and Managing the Dispatcher(s) [page 110]

In case you need to create additional dispatchers, proceed as follows:

- Set the JAVA_HOME environment variable for the <sapsid>adm user to point to /usr/sap/<SAPSID>/ IDM<No>/exe/sapjvm_<No>. Use the <sapsid>adm user to start the dispatcher utility and to create and manage dispatchers.
- 2. Creating and Configuring Dispatchers [page 105]

If you want to use the SAP Java Connector that is included in the installation of the Runtime Components for Unix/Linux, see Using the SAP Java Connector (JCo) [page 116]

SAP Identity Management Developer Studio Tasks

The SAP Identity Management Developer Studio service is deployed on your SAP NetWeaver AS Java. You need to have also the Identity Management Developer Studio client installed manually on every developer or

developer administrator machine as described in Installing the Identity Management Developer Studio [page 77]

Proceed as follows:

- 1. Define the JDBC connection for Identity Management Developer Studio service [page 116].
- 2. Configure the Java system properties [page 119] of the deployed Identity Management Developer Studio service on your SAP NetWeaver AS Java.
- 3. Use and configure the HTTP security (SSL) [page 123] to ensure the security between the deployed Identity Management Developer Studio service and the Identity Management Developer Studio client.
- 4. Perform the initial configuration of Identity Management Developer studio [page 126].
 - 1. Creating the Developer Administrator User in UME [page 129]
 - 2. Add the initial identity store [page 131]

SAP Identity Management User Interface Tasks

The SAP Identity Management User Interface is deployed on your SAP NetWeaver AS Java.

Proceed as follows:

- 1. Define the JDBC connection for the JMX layer [page 131].
- 2. Configure the JMX layer [page 135] to change settings, like configuring the cache, defining which identity store you are working on and configuring the encryption key-file.
- 3. Perform initial configuration of Identity Management User Interface [page 143] to add user(s) to the identity store, to give access to *Self Services* and *Monitoring* tab, to configure the language settings and others.
- 4. Customize Web Dynpro Java applications [page 160] to define a specific theme (the look and feel) of your User Interface application and create and activate keyboard access for User Interface elements.
- 5. (Optionally) Integrate Identity Management User Interface in the SAP Enterprise Portal [page 161]

SAP Identity Management User Interface for HTML5 Tasks

The SAP Identity Management User Interface for HTML5 is deployed on your SAP NetWeaver AS Java.

Proceed as follows:

1. Perform initial configuration of Identity Management User Interface for HTML5 [page 164] to be able to access the Identity Management User Interface for HTML5, to add the predefined forms in the Identity Management Developer Studio and others.

Virtual Directory Server Tasks

The Virtual Directory Server is installed.

Proceed as follows:

- Set the JAVA_HOME environment variable for the <sapsid>adm user to point to /usr/sap/ <SAPSID>/IDM<No>/exe/sapjvm_<No>. Use the <sapsid>adm user to start the Virtual Directory Server.sh script. This user needs read, write and execute permissions for the /usr/sap/<SAPSID>/ VDS<Instance_Number>/VDS folder and all its subfolders and files.
- 2. Start the Virtual Directory Server [page 173]
- 3. Perform initial configuration of Identity Management Virtual Directory Server [page 174]

2.5.2 Unpacking the Core Component

Context

After installing SAP Identity Management with the Software Provisioning Manager, you need to unpack the Core component (ICCORE.SAR) using the SAPCAR archiving tool. The Core component contains the following:

- Configuration packages that contain SAP Identity Management frameworks and connectors
- Database scripts needed for post-installation activities
- Password Hook setup.exe file
- Additional Components

Procedure

- 1. Open a command prompt and navigate to the directory where you want to unpack the Core component.
- 2. Execute the following command:

```
<Path to SAPCAR>\sapcar.exe -xvf <Path to Download
Directory>\ICCORE<Support_Package_Number>_<Version_Number>.SAR
```

Results

You have unpacked the Core component. To use the configuration packages, proceed with importing them in the SAP Identity Management Developer Studio. See: Importing the Provisioning Framework for SAP Identity Management 8.0

2.5.3 Identity Management Database on Oracle

After installing the Identity Management database on Oracle, you can perform the following post-installation activities:

- Create additional users
- Enable or disable the 7.2 approval mechanism
- Create additional developer administrator
- Remove the Identity Management database on Oracle

Proceed as follows:

- 1. Unpack the Core component (ICCORE.SAR) in a dedicated directory using the SAPCAR archiving tool. The Core component contains the database scripts you need to perform those post-installation activities. See Unpacking the Core Component [page 81]
- 2. Define the parameters in the include.sql configuration file that is unpacked with the Core component. The parameters include the database prefix (The default <prefix> is MXMC. We recommend using uppercase alphanumeric values (A-Z, 0-9) for the prefix), JDBC connection parameters, database user passwords and others.

i Note

In the include.sql file, the commented-out code is considered as an executable code. Comments are ignored by the Identity Management installation procedure.

3. Run the scripts as described in the sections below.

Related Information

Database Script Files [page 82] Creating Additional Users [page 83] Enabling and Disabling the 7.2 Approval Mechanism [page 84] Creating Additional Developer Administrator [page 86] Removing Identity Management Database on Oracle [page 87]

2.5.3.1 Database Script Files

The Identity Management database script files are included in the installation kit for the Core component. After installation, the script files are located in the /DatabaseSchema/Oracle folder.

i Note

All the scripts in that folder should have execute permission. In addition, the script files need write access to the folder where they are run from, so if the installation kit is located on a CD or another read-only location, copy the folder with the database scripts to a location with write access before running them.

You can use the following scripts:

Utility Script Files

Script	Description	Parameters	
mxmc-enable-72- approvals.cmd	Enables the 7.2 approval mechanism for an Identity Management database. See Enabling the 7.2 Approval Mechanism [page 85]	Runs as <prefix>_oper. Run the script without parameters to see what is required.</prefix>	
mxmc-disable-72- approvals.cmd	Disables the 7.2 approval mechanism for an Identity Management database. See Disabling the 7.2 Approval Mecha- nism [page 85]	Runs as <prefix>_oper. Run the script without parameters to see what is required.</prefix>	
mxmc-create-dev-admin.cmd	Creates an (additional) <i>Developer</i> <i>Administrator</i> . See Creating Additional Developer Administrator [page 86] This is normally done from Identity Management Developer Studio, but if this is not possible, a <i>Developer</i> <i>Administrator</i> is created with a script. i Note This user must either exist in the UME or be added to it before you can log on to Identity Management Developer Studio.	Runs as <prefix>_oper.</prefix>	
Database Script Files			
Script	Description	Parameters	
mxmc-remove.sh Removes an Identity Management da- tabase. See Removing Identity Manage- ment Database on Oracle [page 87]		The script prompts for the passwords for SYSTEM user.	

2.5.3.2 Creating Additional Users

Prerequisites

You have unpacked the Core component (ICCORE.SAR) in a dedicated directory using the SAPCAR archiving tool. Thus, you will unpack the 2-create-users.sql script.

Context

You might want to create other users or rename the default users created by the installation scripts. You can do this by modifying the 2-create-users.sql script.

i Note

Make sure that you assign the correct roles to the users.

If you want to add users after installation of the Identity Management database, you can do this using the database's administrative tools.

2.5.3.3 Enabling and Disabling the 7.2 Approval Mechanism

The 7.2 approval mechanism was introduced with SAP NetWeaver Identity Management 7.2 SP4. This mechanism is enabled by default for new installations, as well as for updates to a higher SP or patch level and upgrades from version 7.2 to 8.0. It is also possible to disable the 7.2 approval mechanism.

The 7.2 approval mechanism provides:

- Improved performance
- New functionality:
 - Escalations
 - Multi-approver
- Enhanced Identity Management User Interface (optional)
 - Show history
 - More information

When you run the script to enable the 7.2 approval mechanism, it will:

- Activate the 7.2 approval mechanism.
- Convert any pending approvals to the new format.
- Enable the properties to configure the new approval mechanism on the approval task in Identity Management Developer Studio.

i Note

If you run the database scripts for enabling/disabling the 7.2 approval mechanism when it is already enabled or disabled, you will receive a message, and the script will not perform any updates.

2.5.3.3.1 Enabling the 7.2 Approval Mechanism

Prerequisites

You have unpacked the Core component (ICCORE.SAR) in a dedicated directory using the SAPCAR archiving tool.

You have defined the parameters in the include.sql configuration file.

Context

To enable the 7.2 approval mechanism, proceed as follows:

Procedure

- 1. Stop any dispatchers that are currently running.
- Open a command prompt and navigate to the directory where the database installation scripts are located. Make sure you have the same include.sql file as you used during installation.
- 3. Run script mxmc-enable-72-approvals.sh. You are prompted to enter the password for mxmc_oper.
- 4. Start the dispatchers.

2.5.3.3.2 Disabling the 7.2 Approval Mechanism

Prerequisites

You have unpacked the Core component (ICCORE.SAR) in a dedicated directory using the SAPCAR archiving tool.

You have defined the parameters in the include.sql configuration file.

Context

To disable the 7.2 approval mechanism, proceed as follows:

Procedure

- 1. Stop any dispatchers currently running.
- Open a command prompt and navigate to the directory where the database installation scripts are located. Make sure that you have the same include.sql file as you used during installation.
- 3. Run script mxmc-disable-72-approvals.sh. You are prompted for the password for mxmc_oper.
- 4. Start the dispatchers.

Results

The 7.2 approval mechanism is disabled.

i Note

Since this mechanism is enabled by default for new installations, updates to a higher SP or patch level and upgrades to version 8.0, if you want to keep it disabled, you need to run the script again.

2.5.3.4 Creating Additional Developer Administrator

Prerequisites

You have unpacked the Core component (ICCORE.SAR) in a dedicated directory using the SAPCAR archiving tool.

You have defined the parameters in the include.sql configuration file.

Context

The initial *Developer Administrator* is created when the database is installed, and other users are added using Identity Management Developer Studio. If the *Developer Administrator* has lost access to Identity Management Developer Studio for some reason, you can run a script that creates a *Developer Administrator*.

i Note

This user must either exist in the UME or be added to the UME before you can log on to Identity Management Developer Studio.

Procedure

- 1. Open a command prompt and navigate to the directory where the database installation scripts are located.
- 2. Run script mxmc-create-dev-admin.sh. You are prompted to provide the following information:
 - Password for mxmc_oper
 - The name of the Developer Administrator.
- 3. Close the command prompt window.

Next Steps

The user must also exist in UME to be able to log on to Identity Management Developer Studio.

Related Information

Creating the Developer Administrator User in UME [page 129] SAP Identity Management Security Guide

2.5.3.5 Removing Identity Management Database on Oracle

Prerequisites

You have unpacked the Core component (ICCORE.SAR) in a dedicated directory using the SAPCAR archiving tool.

You have defined the parameters in the include.sql configuration file.

Context

i Note

It is not possible to revert this function, so make sure that the correct database name is referenced in the script.

To remove an Identity Management database, proceed as follows:

Procedure

- 1. Open a command prompt and navigate to the directory containing the Identity Management database script files.
- 2. Run command file mxmc-remove.sh. You are prompted to enter the system password.

You can check log file mxmc-update.log for any warnings or errors.

3. Close the command prompt window.

2.5.4 Identity Management Database on IBM DB2

After installing the Identity Management database on IBM DB2, you can perform the following post-installation activities:

- Create additional users
- Remove the Identity Management database on IBM DB2

Proceed as follows:

- 1. Unpack the Core component (ICCORE.SAR) in a dedicated directory using the SAPCAR archiving tool. The Core component contains the database scripts you need to perform those post-installation activities. See Unpacking the Core Component [page 81]
- 2. Define the parameters in the include.sql configuration file that is unpacked with the Core component. The parameters include the database prefix (We recommend using uppercase alphanumeric values (A-Z, 0-9) for the prefix, except for IBM DB2 on UNIX operating systems, where the prefix must contain lowercase alphanumeric values only (a-z, 0-9). When using IBM DB2, make sure that the length of the prefix does not exceed two characters, for example, 'ic' (on UNIX operating systems), JDBC connection parameters, database user passwords and others.

i Note

In the include.sql file, the commented-out code is considered as an executable code. Comments are ignored by the Identity Management installation procedure.

3. Run the scripts as described in the sections below.

Related Information

Database Script Files [page 89] Creating Additional Users [page 90] Removing Identity Management Database on IBM DB2 [page 93]

2.5.4.1 Database Script Files

The Identity Management database script files are included in the installation kit for the Core component. After installation, the script files are located in the /DatabaseSchema/DB2 folder.

i Note

All the scripts in that folder should have execute permission. In addition, the script files need write access to the folder from where they are run. If the installation kit is located on a CD or another read-only location, you therefore have to copy the folder with the database scripts to a location with write access before running them.

i Note

Take care when editing shell scripts (.sh files) in Windows format. Make sure the shell scripts are saved in Unix format.

You can use the following scripts:

Utility Script Files

Script	Description	Account (run as)
mxmc-create-dev-admin.cmd	Creates an (additional) Developer Ad- ministrator.	Runsas <prefix>_oper.</prefix>
	This is normally done from the Iden- tity Management Developer Studio, but in cases where this is not possible, a <i>Developer Administrator</i> is created with a script.	
	i Note This user must either exist in the UME or be added to the UME be- fore you can log on to the Identity Management Developer Studio.	

Script	Description	Account (run as)	
mxmc-enable-72- Enables the 7.2 approval mechanism fo		Runs as <prefix>_oper.</prefix>	
approvals.cmd	an Identity Management database.	Run the script without parameters to see what is required.	
mxmc-disable-72- Disables the 7.2 approval mechanism		Runs as <prefix>_oper.</prefix>	
approvals.cmd	for an Identity Management database.	Run the script without parameters to see what is required.	
Database Script Files			
Script	Description	Account (run as)	
mxmc-remove.sh	Removes an Identity Management data- base.	<prefix>_oper</prefix>	

i Note

The value substituting <prefix> is defined in the include.sql file.

2.5.4.2 Creating Additional Users

You might want to create other users or rename the default users created by the installation scripts.

On Unix/Linux, create the users manually.

Make sure that you assign the correct roles to the users. For information about how to do this, see the 2-create-roles.sql script file.

2.5.4.3 Enabling and Disabling the 7.2 Approval Mechanism

The 7.2 approval mechanism was introduced with SAP NetWeaver Identity Management 7.2 SP4. This mechanism is enabled by default for new installations, as well as for updates to a higher SP or patch level and upgrades from version 7.2 to 8.0. It is also possible to disable the 7.2 approval mechanism.

The 7.2 approval mechanism provides:

- Improved performance
- New functionality:
 - Escalations
 - Multi-approver
- Enhanced Identity Management User Interface (optional)
 - Show history
 - More information

When you run the script to enable the 7.2 approval mechanism, it will:

- Activate the 7.2 approval mechanism.
- Convert any pending approvals to the new format.
- Enable the properties to configure the new approval mechanism on the approval task in Identity Management Developer Studio.

i Note

If you run the database scripts for enabling/disabling the 7.2 approval mechanism when it is already enabled or disabled, you will receive a message, and the script will not perform any updates.

2.5.4.3.1 Enabling the 7.2 Approval Mechanism

Prerequisites

You have unpacked the Core component (ICCORE.SAR) in a dedicated directory using the SAPCAR archiving tool.

You have defined the parameters in the include.sql configuration file.

Context

To enable the 7.2 approval mechanism, proceed as follows:

Procedure

- 1. Stop any dispatchers that are currently running.
- Open a command prompt and navigate to the directory where the database installation scripts are located. Make sure you have the same include.sql file as you used during installation.
- 3. Run script mxmc-enable-72-approvals.sh. You are prompted to enter the password for mxmc_oper.
- 4. Start the dispatchers.

2.5.4.3.2 Disabling the 7.2 Approval Mechanism

Prerequisites

You have unpacked the Core component (ICCORE.SAR) in a dedicated directory using the SAPCAR archiving tool.

You have defined the parameters in the include.sql configuration file.

Context

To disable the 7.2 approval mechanism, proceed as follows:

Procedure

- 1. Stop any dispatchers currently running.
- Open a command prompt and navigate to the directory where the database installation scripts are located. Make sure that you have the same include.sql file as you used during installation.

3. Run script mxmc-disable-72-approvals.sh. You are prompted for the password for mxmc_oper.

4. Start the dispatchers.

Results

The 7.2 approval mechanism is disabled.

i Note

Since this mechanism is enabled by default for new installations, updates to a higher SP or patch level and upgrades to version 8.0, if you want to keep it disabled, you need to run the script again.

2.5.4.4 Removing Identity Management Database on IBM DB2

Context

i Note

It is not possible to revert this function, so make sure that the correct database name is referenced in the script.

i Note

In Unix, the mxmc-remove.sh script requires the user to be authorized to execute the sudoer command.

To remove an Identity Management database, proceed as follows:

Procedure

- 1. For Unix/Linux: Open a command prompt.
- 2. Navigate to the directory containing the Identity Management script files.
- 3. Run the mxmc-remove.sh command file. You are prompted to enter the system password. You can check the mxmc-update.log log file for warnings or errors.
- 4. Close the command prompt window.

2.5.5 Identity Management Database on SAP ASE

After installing the Identity Management database on SAP ASE, you can perform the following post-installation activities:

- Create additional logins
- Enable or disable the 7.2 approval mechanism
- Create additional developer administrator
- Remove the Identity Management database on SAP ASE

Proceed as follows:

1. Unpack the Core component (ICCORE.SAR) in a dedicated directory using the SAPCAR archiving tool. The Core component contains the database scripts you need to perform those post-installation activities. See Unpacking the Core Component [page 81]

2. Run the scripts as described in the sections below.

Related Information

Database Script Files [page 94] Creating Aditional Logins [page 96] Enabling or Disabling the 7.2 Approval Mechanism [page 96] Creating an Additional Developer Administrator [page 98] Removing Identity Management Database on SAP ASE [page 99]

2.5.5.1 Database Script Files

The Identity Management database script files are included in the installation kit for the Core component. After installation, the script files are located in the /DatabaseSchema/ASE folder.

i Note

All the scripts in that folder should have execute permission. In addition, the script files need write access to the folder from where they are run, so if the installation kit is located on a CD or another read-only location, copy the folder with the database scripts to a location with write access before you run them.

i Note

Shell scripts are written for bash shell, thus the Unix operating system should have bash shell installed. All shell scripts should be executable before running them on Unix. Note that you might encounter some issues for other shell types in Unix.

i Note

All shell scripts should run with the sybase user that has all relevant environment variables set correctly. Also, make sure the sybase user is allowed write permissions to the directory where the data files of <PREFIX>_db reside.

i Note

The isql command line tool must be installed on the machine where the scripts are executed. This is required for the SAP Identity Management scripts to function properly. The isql command line tool is provided either with the ASE server installation or with the ASE OpenServer client which is a part of the ASE SDK Suite.

You can use the following scripts:

Utility Script Files

Script Description		Parameters	
mxmc-test.sh	Tests the connection to the database server. The output is a list of databases.	Runs as sa (system administrator)	
		see what is required.	
mxmc-enable-72-	Enables the 7.2 approval mechanism for	Runs as <prefix>_oper.</prefix>	
approvals.sh	an Identity Management database.	Run the script without parameters to see what is required.	
mxmc-disable-72-	Disables the 7.2 approval mechanism	Runs as <prefix>_oper.</prefix>	
approvals.sh	for an Identity Management database.	Run the script without parameters to see what is required.	
mxmc-create-dev-admin.sh	Creates an (additional) <i>Developer</i> Administrator.	Runs as <prefix>_oper.</prefix>	
	This is normally done from the Iden- tity Management Developer Studio, but in cases where this is not possible, a <i>Developer Administrator</i> with a script.		
	i Note This user must either exist in the UME or be added to the UME be- fore you can log on to the Identity Management Developer Studio.		
Database Script Files			
Script	Description	Parameters	
mxmc-remove.sh	Removes an Identity Management database. Calls the script mxmc – xremove.cmd with default values for database prefix, host name and user name (sa).	The script prompts for the passwords for sa.	

2.5.5.2 Creating Aditional Logins

Context

You may want to create additional logins or rename the default logins created by the installation scripts. To do this, you can modify the *l-create-db.sql* script. It is used to set the default settings when creating the database. For example, max memory, number of user connections and so on.

i Note

If you want to add logins after installation of the Identity Management database, you can do this using the database's administrative tools. Make sure that you assign the correct roles. Run the script using an SQL Query execution tool (native tools like isql, for example).

Procedure

- 1. Open the 1-create-db.sql script in a text editor.
- 2. Modify or add the logins in the file.
- 3. Save the file.

2.5.5.3 Enabling or Disabling the 7.2 Approval Mechanism

The 7.2 approval mechanism was introduced with SAP NetWeaver Identity Management 7.2 SP4. This mechanism is enabled by default for new installations, as well as for updates to a higher SP or patch level and upgrades from version 7.2 to 8.0. It is also possible to disable the 7.2 approval mechanism.

The 7.2 approval mechanism provides:

- Improved performance
- New functionality:
 - Escalations
 - Multi-approver
- Enhanced Identity Management User Interface (optional)
 - Show history
 - More information

When you run the script to enable the 7.2 approval mechanism, it will:

- Turn on the 7.2 approval mechanism.
- Convert any pending approvals to the new format.

• Enable the properties to configure the new approval mechanism on the approval task in Identity Management Developer Studio.

${f i}$ Note

If you run the database scripts for enabling/disabling the 7.2 approval mechanism when it is already enabled or disabled, you will receive a message, and the script will not perform any updates.

Related Information

Enabling the 7.2 Approval Mechanism [page 97] Disabling the 7.2 Approval Mechanism [page 98]

2.5.5.3.1 Enabling the 7.2 Approval Mechanism

Context

To enable the 7.2 approval mechanism, proceed as follows:

Procedure

- 1. Stop any dispatchers that are currently running.
- 2. Open a command prompt and navigate to the directory where the database installation scripts are located.
- 3. Run the command file mxmc-enable-72-approvals.sh. You are prompted to enter the password for mxmc_oper.
- 4. Start the dispatchers.

2.5.5.3.2 Disabling the 7.2 Approval Mechanism

Context

To disable the 7.2 approval mechanism, proceed as follows:

Procedure

- 1. Stop any dispatchers currently running.
- 2. Open a command prompt and navigate to the directory where the database installation scripts are located.
- 3. Run the command file mxmc-disable-72-approvals.sh. You are prompted for the password for mxmc_oper.
- 4. Start the dispatchers.

Results

The 7.2 approval mechanism is disabled.

i Note

Since this mechanism is enabled by default for new installations, updates to a higher SP or patch level and upgrades to version 8.0, if you want to keep it disabled, you need to run the script again.

2.5.5.4 Creating an Additional Developer Administrator

Context

The initial *Developer Administrator* is created when the database is installed, and other users are added using Identity Management Developer Studio. If the *Developer Administrator* has lost access to Identity Management Developer Studio, you can run a script that creates a *Developer Administrator*.

i Note

This user must either exist in the UME or be added to the UME before you can log on to Identity Management Developer Studio.

Procedure

- 1. Open a command prompt and navigate to the directory where the database installation scripts are located.
- 2. Run the command file mxmc-create-dev-admin.sh. You are prompted to provide the following information:
 - Password for mxmc_oper
 - The name of the Developer Administrator.
- 3. Close the command prompt window.

Next Steps

The user must also exist in UME to be able to log on to Identity Management Developer Studio.

Related Information

Creating the Developer Administrator User in UME [page 129] SAP Identity Management Security Guide

2.5.5.5 Removing Identity Management Database on SAP ASE

Context

i Note

It is not possible to revert this function, so make sure that the correct database name is referenced in the script.

To remove an Identity Management database, proceed as follows:

Procedure

- 1. Open a command prompt and navigate to the directory where the database installation scripts are located.
- 2. Run the command file mxmc-remove.sh.

You are prompted for:

- The host name of the server running the SAP ASE
- The port of the server running the SAP ASE
- The password for sa
- 3. Close the command prompt window.

2.5.6 Creating Encryption Keys

To create an encryption key, you use a utility delivered with SAP Identity Management called SAP Identity Management Keys Utility.

Prerequisites

You have installed the Identity Management Runtime Components.

Context

After installing SAP Identity Management 8.0 with Software Provisioning Manager 1.0, the initial encryption key is created and stored in the Keys.ini file.

The Keys.ini file is located in /usr/sap/<SAPSID>/SYS/global/security/data/Key/Keys.ini directory and distributed to the installation directory of SAP Identity Management Runtime Components: /usr/sap/<SAPSID>/IDM<Instance_Number>/Identity_Center/Key/Keys.ini.

If you need to create and maintain additional encryption key(s) using the Keys Utility, proceed as follows:

Procedure

- 1. From a command prompt, navigate to the directory of the Keys Utility: /usr/sap/<SAPSID>/SYS/ global/security/data/KeysIniUtility.
- Start the utility user interface by executing the command keysiniutil gui file=<file location>. For example, keysiniutil gui file=/usr/sap/<SAPSID>/SYS/global/security/data/Key/ Keys.ini.

Use the keysiniutil.sh file for Unix.

This opens the SAP Identity Management Keys Utility dialog box (the graphical user interface). You can use it to add a new key and to fill in the parameters/fields for this key.

🕌 SAP Identity Management Keys Utility 📃 🔲 🗙					
<u>F</u> ile <u>K</u> ey					
File:	r/sap\IJM\SYS\global\security\data\Key\Keys.ini				
Current Key:	KEY001				
Encryption Algorithm:	AES128CBC				
Hashing Algorithm:	PBKDF2_SHA1				
	Save				

File	Path to the Keys.ini file. By default, the key(s) are stored in /usr/sap/ <sapsid>/SYS/global/ security/data/Key/Keys.ini.</sapsid>		
Current Key	Specify the currently active key.		
	i Note After installing SAP Identity Management 8.0 system, the initial encryption key (KEY001) is created and set as the currently active key.		
Encryption Algorithm	Select the encryption algorithm for the key.		
	i Note		
	You can no longer select <i>Standard</i> and <i>DES3</i> encryption algorithms for the key. Existing configurations with <i>Standard</i> and <i>DES3</i> algorithms will continue to work, but we highly recommend that you choose another encryption algorithm. Once you do this, you cannot switch back to <i>Standard</i> and <i>DES3</i> again.		
	You can choose from the following:		
	• DES3CBC		
	• AES128CBC		
	 AES1920BC AES256CBC 		
	AES128CBC is the default encryption algorithm.		

Hash Algorithm

Select the hash algorithm for the key.

i Note

You can no longer select *MD5* hash algorithm for the key. Existing configurations with *MD5* algorithm will continue to work, but we highly recommend that you choose another hash algorithm. Once you do this, you cannot switch back to *MD5* again.

You can choose from the following:

- SSHA
- SHA256
- SHA384
- SHA512
- PBKDF2_SHA1

PBKDF2_SHA1 is the default hash algorithm.

3. To create a new key, choose Key Senerate .

This will generate the new key:

Key Add	Key Added			
i	New key KEY002 generated. See the SAP Identity Management Security guide for details on how to distribute and activate the new key.			
	OK			

- a. Choose OK to close the Key Added dialog box.
- b. Choose Save. This will add the new key to the Keys.ini file. If the new key is selected in the Current Key field, this will also set it as the currently active key.

You can check that the Keys.ini file now contains the KEY002 key. It is set as the currently active key.

🥁 D:	\usr'	\sap\IJM\SYS\global\securit	y\data\Key\Key	s.ini - Notepad++ [Administra	ator]		_ 🗆 🗙
File	Edit	Search View Encoding Lang	juage Settings N	Macro Run Plugins Window ?	?		X
] 🐻		H 🖻 🗟 🔓 😂 🖌 🖻	() 2 ¢	# 🍇 🔍 🤜 🖪 🕞	🎝 1 腪 🗷 💹	[I]	🖪 »
🗎 K	eys.in	i 🗙					
-	1	📮 [KEYS]					
2	Z	KEY001=602F2DF8D7	EOE1BFF04B	6973E21AC90511D2FE2	2F8A36FEC7FFF	FAE5D4CB76B9	3
:	3	LKEY002=A812080A1E	46C9AACA42	A33F363E9355B470A70	C70AA1D0C2470	04246CE73E3905	5
	4	📮 [CURRENT]					
	5	LKEY=KEY002					
	6	📮 [ALGORITHMS]					
· /	7	ENCRYPTION=AES128	CBC				
8	З	HASH=PBKDF2_SHA1					
	9	L					
MS ler	ngth :	231 lines : 9	Ln:1 Col:1 Se	el:0 0	Dos\Windows	ANSI as UTF-8	INS //

c. If you need to add any more keys, choose Key Senerate from the main menu. If you have more than one key in the Keys.ini file, you need to select one of the keys in the *Current Key* field as currently active. Choose *Save* to save the changes to the Keys.ini file.

You can also delete keys. To do this, choose \Bbbk *Key Delete* Torm the main menu. This will delete whichever key is set as the current key. Once you have deleted this, the key above it in the list (n-1) will be set as the current key. Alternatively, you can set a different key as the current one and choose *Save* to save the changes to the Keys.ini file.

- d. Select File Exit from the main menu to exit and close the utility user interface.
- 4. You need to copy the Keys.ini file to the installation directory of SAP Identity Management Runtime Components. For example: /usr/sap/<SAPSID>/IDM<Instance_Number>/Identity_Center/Key/ Keys.ini.
- 5. Set the value for the com.sap.idm.jmx.crypt.keyfile property to be the full path to the Keys.ini file. For example: /usr/sap/<SAPSID>/SYS/global/security/data/Key/Keys.ini. See Configuring the JMX Layer for information about how to edit a property value.
- 6. See SAP Identity Management Security Guide for information about distributing and activating new key(s).

Related Information

Using Commands to Create and Maintain Encryption Keys in the Keys.ini File [page 103] Configuring the JMX Layer [page 135] SAP Identity Management Security Guide

2.5.6.1 Using Commands to Create and Maintain Encryption Keys in the Keys.ini File

A set of commands is available with SAP Identity Management Keys Utility. These allow you to create and maintain the encryption key(s) and the Keys.ini file without using the graphical user interface.

The following set of commands is available:

i Note

From a command prompt, navigate to /usr/sap/<SAPSID>/IDM<Instance_Number>/ Identity_Center/KeysIniUtility directory. Use the keysiniutil.sh for Unix.

Command	Description
keysiniutil	Displays the usage information for the utility.
keysiniutil add file= <file location=""></file>	Generates an encryption key and adds it to the ${\tt Keys.ini}$ file.

Command	Description
	This command will generate the Keys.ini file if it does not already exist, and then add the generated key to it. The default directory is /usr/sap/ <sapsid>/SYS/ global/security/data/Key/Keys.ini.</sapsid>
	If the key is initial, it will automatically be defined as the currently active key. If the key is not initial, you will need to select the currently active key using the command keysiniutil setkey <name key="" of="" that<br="" the="">exists in the Keys.ini file>.</name>
keysiniutil print	Prints/displays the content of the Keys.ini file.
keysiniutil setkey <name key="" of="" that<br="" the="">exists in the Keys.ini file></name>	Sets the given encryption key as the currently active key. Example: keysiniutil setkey KEY002.
keysiniutil setenc <encryption algorithm></encryption 	Specifies the encryption algorithm for the key(s). Example: keysiniutil setenc Scramble, keysiniutil setenc DES3 or keysiniutil setenc DES3CBC. DES3CBC is selected as the default encryption algorithm.
keysiniutil sethash <hash algorithm=""></hash>	Specifies the hash algorithm for the key(s). Example: keysiniutil sethash MD5 or keysiniutil sethash SSHA. SSHA is selected as the default hash algorithm.
keysiniutil delete <name key="" of="" the=""></name>	Deletes the specified key. Example: keysiniutil delete KEY001. If the key you are deleting is defined as the current key, the command sets the key with the lowest number as the current key by default. To set another key, as the current key, use the command keysiniutil setkey <name of the key that exists in the Keys.ini file>.</name
keysiniutil gui file= <file location=""></file>	Opens the SAP Identity Management Keys Utility dialog box (the graphical user interface).

See SAP Identity Management Security Guide for details about distributing and activating the new key(s).

Related Information

SAP Identity Management Security Guide

2.5.7 Creating and Configuring Dispatchers

To create and configure dispatchers, you use a utility delivered with SAP Identity Management called SAP Identity Management Dispatcher Utility.

Prerequisites

- The Keys.ini file is available. The file is created and maintained centrally using the SAP Identity Management Keys Utility and then distributed manually to necessary locations. See Creating Encryption Keys [page 100].
- You use the <sapsid>adm user to start the dispatcher utility and to manage the dispatchers (that is, to create, start, delete, resume and others).
- You have set the JAVA_HOME environment variable for the <sapsid>adm user to point to /usr/sap/ <SAPSID>/IDM<No>/exe/sapjvm_<No>

Context

After installing SAP Identity Management 8.0 with Software Provisioning Manager 1.0, the initial dispatcher is created and started. It is set as the default dispatcher.

🛃 S.	🛃 SAP Identity Management Dispatcher Utility 📃 📃 🗙				
<u>F</u> ile	Dispatch	er <u>T</u> ools			
	ld	Name	Status	Service State	New
1	di	isp02	Running	Running	
					Delete
					<u>R</u> efresh
					<u>S</u> top
					S <u>u</u> spend
					Uninstall
					Set Default
					Test
Con	nected as v	vetidmtest034/MXMC3_admin			-

If you need to create and configure additional dispatcher using the utility, proceed as follows:

Procedure

- 1. From a command prompt, navigate to the directory of the Dispatcher Utility: /usr/sap/<SAPSID>/ IDM<Instance_Number>/Identity_Center.
- 2. Start the utility user interface by executing the command **dispatcherutil** gui (use the file dispatcherutil.sh for Unix).

This opens the SAP Identity Management Dispatcher Utility dialog box (the graphical user interface).

- 3. The first time the utility is run, you will see that some settings of the Dispatcher Utility are already defined, including the connection strings to access the Identity Management database with your <prefix>_admin user and the <prefix>_rt user. See Defining the Settings for the Identity Management Dispatcher Utility for details.
- 4. To create and manage dispatchers, you can either use the utility's graphical user interface or alternatively use the commands allowing you to create and manage the dispatcher(s) without using the graphical user interface. See *Creating and Managing the Dispatcher(s)* for details when using the graphical user interface, and *Using Commands to Create and Manage the Dispatcher(s)* for more details about the available commands.

Related Information

SAP Identity Management Security Guide Defining the Settings for the Identity Management Dispatcher Utility [page 107] Creating and Managing the Dispatcher(s) [page 110] Using Commands to Create and Manage the Dispatcher(s) [page 114]

2.5.7.1 Defining the Settings for the Identity Management Dispatcher Utility

The first time the utility is run you will see that some settings of the Dispatcher Utility are already defined, including the connection strings to access the Identity Management database with your <prefix>_admin user and the <prefix>_rt user.

Context

If you need to review or change any of the settings for the utility, proceed as follows:

Procedure

1. In the SAP Identity Management Dispatcher Utility dialog, choose Tools Settings

📓 SAP Identity Management Dispatcher Utility								
<u>F</u> ile	e Dispatcher Tools							
	ld		<u>S</u> ettings		Status	Service State	New	
1		displ	Runtime Settings		Running	Running		
							Delete	
							<u>R</u> efresh	
							<u>S</u> top	
							S <u>u</u> spend	
							<u>U</u> ninstall	
							Set Default	
							Test	
Conr	Connected as vetidmtest034/MXMC3_admin							

2. In the Settings dialog, fill in the following parameters/fields:

🛓 Settings	- 0	\times
JDBC Driver:	/usr/sap/IOR/db2jcc4.jar	
Driver Classname:	com.ibm.db2.jcc.DB2Driver	
JAVA Home:	/usr/java/sapjvm_8	
DSE Home:	/usr/sap/IOR/IDM02/Identity_Center	
DSE Class Path:		
$\label{eq:connection} Connection \ String \ for \ < \ prefix >_ admin:$	axStatements = 100; retrieveMessagesFromServerOnGet	
	ОКС	ancel

Field	Value	
JDBC Driver	Choose the button to the right of the field to browse the file system to locate the data- base driver (JAR file) that the dispatcher should use to access the Identity Management database.	
Driver Classname	Enter classnames of all JDBC drivers that the runtime engine needs. Example: <i>com.sybase.jdbc4.jdbc.SybDriver</i> .	
JAVA Home	Define the path to your SAP JVM 8.	
DSE Home	Define the directory where the runtime engine is installed, by default /usr/sap/ <sapsid>/IDM<instance_number>/Identity_Center. Choose the but- ton to the right of the field to browse the file system to locate the correct directory.</instance_number></sapsid>	
DSE Class Path	Enter the Identity Management dispatcher class path that is passed to the Java runtime engine. For example: /usr/userlibrary1.jar:/usr/userlibrary2.jar	
Field	Value	
-------------------------------------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	--
Connection String (<prefix>_admin)</prefix>	Define the connection string to access the Identity Management database with your <prefix>_admin user. Choose the button to the right of the field to open JDBC URL Wizard.</prefix>	
	Select the correct JDBC driver for your Identity Management database:	
	 For Oracle, select <i>Oracle thin driver</i> from the list. For IBM DB2, select <i>DB2 universal driver</i> from the list. For SAP ASE, select <i>SAP Adaptive Server Enterprise dirver</i> from the list. Choose <i>Next</i> > and fill in connection information for the database, e.g. servername (or the IP address), port number, database name and the admin user or other information requested by the wizard. 	
	i Note When using IBM DB2, the wizard prompts you for the <i>Current Schema</i> and the <i>Current Function Path</i> . In both fields, enter the <prefix>_OPER user in uppercase letters. For example: IC_OPER.</prefix>	
	Choose <i>Finish</i> to add the connection string to the field. The connection string is not displayed in clear text.	

3. Choose *OK* to save the settings.

You need to restart the application to load the defined settings. Choose *OK* to close the restart warning and the application.

- 4. Restart the application. You will get a login dialog box. Provide the credentials for your database admin user.
- 5. The connection string for the <prefix>_rt user needs to be defined (a warning appears after login). Choose Yes to open the *Runtime Settings* dialog and define the connection string.

Runtime Settings	×
Connection String for <prefix>_rt: ••</prefix>	•••••••
	OK Cancel

Define the following field:

Option	Description
Connection String (<prefix>_rt)</prefix>	Choose the button to the right of the field to open the JDBC URL Wizard.
	Select the correct JDBC driver for your Identity Management database:
	• For Oracle, select <i>Oracle thin driver</i> from the list.

• For IBM DB2, select *DB2 universal driver* from the list.

Option	Description
	• For SAP ASE, select SAP Adaptive Server Enterprise dirver from the list.
	Choose <i>Next</i> > and fill in connection information for the database, e.g. servername (or the IP address), port number, database name, the credentials for your RT user or other information requested by the wizard.
	i Note When using IBM DB2, the wizard prompts you for the <i>Current Schema</i> and the <i>Current Function Path</i> . In both fields, enter the <prefix>_OPER user in uppercase letters. For example: IC_OPER.</prefix>
	Choose <i>Finish</i> to add the connection string to the field. The connection string is not displayed in clear text.

6. Choose *OK* to save the settings and close the dialog box.

The list of dispatchers is displayed. You can now create the dispatcher(s). See *Creating and Managing the Dispatcher*(s) for details.

Alternatively, you can close the graphical user interface and instead use commands to create and manage the dispatcher(s) (see *Using Commands to Create and Manage the Dispatcher*(s) for more details). To exit and close the graphical user interface, select File Exit from the main menu.

Related Information

Creating and Configuring Dispatchers [page 105] Creating and Managing the Dispatcher(s) [page 110] Using Commands to Create and Manage the Dispatcher(s) [page 114]

2.5.7.2 Creating and Managing the Dispatcher(s)

To create and manage the dispatcher(s), you use SAP Identity Management Dispatcher Utility. The utility offers a graphical user interface for dispatcher handling.

Prerequisites

- You use the <sapsid>adm user to start the dispatcher utility and to manage the dispatchers (that is, to create, start, delete, resume and others).
- You have set the JAVA_HOME environment variable for the <sapsid>adm user to point to /usr/sap/ <SAPSID>/IDM<No>/exe/sapjvm_<No>

Context

To create and manage dispatchers using the utility's graphical user interface, proceed as follows:

Procedure

- 1. To create a dispatcher, choose *New* from the menu on the right (or select) *File New* from the main menu). This will open the *New Dispatcher* dialog box.
- 2. In the *Name* field, enter a dispatcher name.

i Note

The name of the dispatcher should not contain space characters only and should not be empty. Depending on your operating system, the name of the dispatcher should not contain the following symbols:

- Mac OS slash (/), and colon (:)
- UNIX slash (/)

The location of the dispatcher service scripts that will be created is displayed in the *Target Location* field (by default /usr/sap/<SAPSID>/IDM<No>/Identity_Center/Service-Scripts).

3. Choose *OK* to create the dispatcher and add it to the dispatcher list.

$\mathbf{i}\,\mathsf{Note}$

The following file is generated for the dispatcher: Dispatcher_Service_<name>.sh when running on Unix, where <name> is the name of the dispatcher as defined upon creation. In addition, a property file is created, that is, Dispatcher_Service_<name>.prop.

The service state of the new dispatcher is Not Installed and its status Stopped.

SAP Ident	ity Management Dispatcher Utility			
e <u>D</u> ispato	cher <u>T</u> ools			
ld	Name	Status	Service State	New
	disp02	Running	Running	
	disp03	Stopped	Not Installed	Delete
				<u>R</u> efresh
				<u>S</u> tart
				S <u>u</u> spend
				<u>I</u> nstall
				Set Default
				Test
nnected a	s vetidmtest034'MXMC3_admin			

4. To set a default dispatcher, select it from the dispatcher list and choose *Set Default* or choose *Yes* when you are asked Do you want to set <Dispatcher Name> as the default dispatcher?

Use this option to have a default dispatcher selected for jobs and tasks in the imported configuration packages in SAP Identity Management Developer Studio.

5. To verify the dispatcher configuration, choose *Test* from the menu on the right. This will verify that the dispatcher is able to start. The dispatcher must be stopped (not running) before it can be tested.

You should be able to see the following:



Verify that no error messages are displayed during the process. Abort the execution by pressing CTRL + C.

6. You can now choose *Start* from the menu on the right (or select Dispatcher Start from the main menu) to start the created and installed dispatcher service. Both the service state and the status of the dispatcher will change to *Running*. You may have to choose *Refresh* (or select File File File from the main menu) to update the fields.

By default, the dispatcher is started automatically each time the system is started.

7. Once the dispatcher is up and running, you have the possibility to:

Option	Description
Suspend the dispatcher	Select the running dispatcher you want to suspend from the list and choose the <i>Suspend</i> button from the menu on the right (alternatively, select <i>Dispatcher Suspend</i> from the main menu). When suspended, the dispatcher service will still be running (state), but its processing is suspended (status).
	The <i>Suspend</i> button is not visible if the dispatcher is already suspended (you will then only see the <i>Resume</i> button).
Resume the dispatcher	Select the suspended dispatcher you want to resume from the list and choose the <i>Resume</i> button from the menu on the right (alternatively, select <i>Dispatcher Resume</i> from the main menu). When resumed, the dispatcher service is running and processing (both its state and status are <i>Running</i>).
	i Note The <i>Resume</i> button is not visible if the dispatcher is already running (you will then only see the <i>Suspend</i> button).
Stop the dis- patcher	Select the dispatcher you want to stop from the list and choose the <i>Stop</i> button from the menu on the right (alternatively, select \triangleright <i>Dispatcher</i> \triangleright <i>Stop</i> from the main menu).
Test the dis- patcher	Select the dispatcher you want to test from the list and choose the <i>Test</i> button from the menu on the right.
	i Note The dispatcher must be stopped (not running) before it can be tested. To abort the test execution in the command prompt, press $\Box TRL + \Box$.
Uninstall the dispatcher	Select the dispatcher you want to uninstall from the list and choose the <i>Uninstall</i> button from the menu on the right (alternatively, select \blacktriangleright <i>Dispatcher</i> \triangleright <i>Uninstall</i> \supseteq from the main menu).
	i Note The dispatcher must be stopped (not running) before it can be uninstalled.
Delete the dis- patcher	Select the dispatcher you want to delete from the list and choose the <i>Delete</i> button from the menu on the right (alternatively, select $File $ <i>Delete</i> from the main menu). Deleting the dispatcher will also delete the generated dispatcher files.

Option	Description	
	i Note The dispatcher must be stopped (not running) before it can be deleted.	
	i Note Deleting a dispatcher will remove any reference to it (e.g. from jobs) as well. You have to reconfig- ure the dispatcher for the affected jobs.	
Regenerate the dispatcher scripts	From the dispatcher list, select the dispatcher you want to regenerate the scripts for and select <i>Dispatcher Regenerate Scripts</i> from the main menu). You would normally regenerate the scripts for a dispatcher after a configuration change.	

8. You can create as many dispatchers as you need, which will be listed in the dispatcher list. To update the list and the displayed dispatcher properties, choose the *Refresh* button from the menu on the right or select *File Refresh* from the main menu. To exit the utility and close its graphical user interface, select *File Exit* from the main menu.

Related Information

Creating and Configuring Dispatchers [page 105] Using Commands to Create and Manage the Dispatcher(s) [page 114]

2.5.7.3 Using Commands to Create and Manage the Dispatcher(s)

A set of commands is available with SAP Identity Management Dispatcher Utility, allowing you to create and manage the dispatcher(s) without using the graphical user interface.

- 1. From a command prompt, navigate to the directory /usr/sap/<SAPSID>/IDM<Instance_Number>/ Identity_Center.
- 2. Use the file dispatcherutil.sh for Unix.

i Note

For UNIX, commands are case sensitive. Make sure you use lower case.

The following set of commands is available:

Command	Description
dispatcherutil	Displays the usage information for the utility.

Command		Description
dispatcherutil	add <dispatcher name=""></dispatcher>	Creates a dispatcher with the given name and generates necessary service files and a property file.
		i Note The following file is generated for the dispatcher: Dispatcher_Service_ <name>.sh, where <name> is the name of the dispatcher as defined upon creation. In addition, a property file is created, that is, Dispatcher_Service_<name>.prop.</name></name></name>
		You can create as many dispatchers as you need.
dispatcherutil	install <dispatcher name=""></dispatcher>	Installs the dispatcher with the given name.
dispatcherutil name>	set_default <dispatcher< td=""><td>Sets an installed dispatcher as the default one.</td></dispatcher<>	Sets an installed dispatcher as the default one.
dispatcherutil	start <dispatcher name=""></dispatcher>	Starts the installed dispatcher with the given name.
dispatcherutil	suspend <dispatcher name=""></dispatcher>	Suspends a running dispatcher. The dispatcher service will still be running, but its processing is on hold (suspended).
dispatcherutil	resume <dispatcher name=""></dispatcher>	Resumes a suspended dispatcher. The dispatcher service will then be running and processing.
dispatcherutil	stop <dispatcher name=""></dispatcher>	Immediately stops the running dispatcher with the given name (hard stop).
dispatcherutil name>	softstop <dispatcher< td=""><td>Stops the running dispatcher with the given name, when the ongoing processes handled by the dispatcher have completed (soft stop).</td></dispatcher<>	Stops the running dispatcher with the given name, when the ongoing processes handled by the dispatcher have completed (soft stop).
dispatcherutil	delete <dispatcher name=""></dispatcher>	Deletes the stopped dispatcher with the given name.
		The belonging service script files and the property file of the given dispatcher will also be deleted.
dispatcherutil	list	Lists all available dispatchers in the dispatcher list.
dispatcherutil	gui	Opens the SAP Identity Management Dispatcher Utility dialog box (the graphical user interface).
dispatcherutil	set_jdbc_url <jdbc url=""></jdbc>	Defines the connection string to access the Identity Management database for the <prefix>_rt user.</prefix>
		Note that the JDBC URL must be enclosed in double quotes ("").

2.5.8 Using the SAP Java Connector (JCo)

The SAP Java Connector version 3 (JCo 3) is included in the installation of Runtime Components for Unix/Linux.

i Note

The JCo library is 64-bit, and requires 64-bit version of the Java Runtime Environment.

i Note

If you previously have used JCo 2, you must regenerate the dispatcher scripts before starting the dispatcher after the upgrade.

2.5.9 Defining the JDBC Connection for Identity Management Developer Studio Service

In order to be able to retrieve data from the identity store of the Identity Management Developer Studio, a JDBC data source needs to be pointing to the Identity Management database.

To set up the JDBC connection, the following steps need to be completed:

• Before creating a JDBC data source, make sure that the driver for your database system are deployed on your SAP NetWeaver AS for Java.

i Note

If operating with multiple Java nodes, the driver needs to be installed on all these.

i Note

The JDBC driver you use must be compatible with the SAP JVM of your SAP NetWeaver version. For example, SAP NetWeaver 7.3 is compatible with SAP JVM 6.1 (JDK 1.6). This means that you cannot use JDBC driver version higher than 4.0.

- Add the Identity Management database as a data source on your SAP NetWeaver AS for Java server. The procedure may be different depending on your version of SAP NetWeaver. The following versions are supported:
 - SAP NetWeaver 7.3 SP09 or higher
 - SAP NetWeaver 7.3 including Enhancement Package 1 SP06 Patch 3 or higher
 - SAP NetWeaver 7.4 SP02 or higher
 - SAP NetWeaver 7.5 SP08 or higher

To set up this connection for the supported SAP NetWeaver versions, use the SAP NetWeaver Administrator (NWA).

To access the SAP NetWeaver Administrator, enter http(s)://<host>:<port> in your browser (which will take you to your start page) and select SAP NetWeaver Administrator. Alternatively, just enter http(s)://

<host>:<port>/nwa directly in your browser. Both will display the login page for the SAP NetWeaver Administrator. Provide your credentials to access.

Related Information

Deploying the JDBC Driver [page 117] Adding the Database as the Data Source [page 117] Configuring the Java System Properties [page 119]

2.5.9.1 Deploying the JDBC Driver

Make sure that the driver for your Identity Management database system is deployed on your SAP NetWeaver AS for Java.

To deploy the driver for your database system, follow the descriptions of managing the JDBC drivers for your SAP NetWeaver version (see *Related Information*).

i Note

Even though specifying an arbitrary name for your driver entry (such as myDriver) will be sufficient, it is recommended to give the driver a logical name, for example, ORACLE, DB2.

Related Information

Managing JDBC Drivers for SAP NetWeaver 7.3 Managing JDBC Drivers for SAP NetWeaver 7.3 EHP1 Managing JDBC Drivers for SAP NetWeaver 7.4 Managing JDBC Drivers for SAP NetWeaver 7.5

2.5.9.2 Adding the Database as the Data Source

To add the Identity Management database as the data source on your SAP NetWeaver AS for Java, follow the descriptions of managing the JDBC data sources for your SAP NetWeaver version.

i Note

You have to choose the JDBC version 1.x when creating a JDBC data source in the SAP NetWeaver AS for Java. It is important to emphasize that the mentioned JDBC version is not related to the version of the JDBC driver you are using. You may use all supported JDBC driver versions for the supported databases.

- Managing JDBC DataSources for SAP NetWeaver 7.3
- Managing JDBC DataSources for SAP NetWeaver 7.3 EHP1
- Managing JDBC DataSources for SAP NetWeaver 7.4
- Managing JDBC DataSources for SAP NetWeaver 7.5

Make sure to save the defined data source when all the necessary information is provided.

Following the processes for adding the database as a data source, pay special attention to the following fields (and apply the values listed) on the *Settings* tab:

Name of the Field	Value/Comments
Data Source Name	No special requirements for the name of the data source. E.g. IDM_DataSource_DevStudio.
	You may create an alias for your data source, but this is not required. Read more about creating and managing aliases for SAP NetWeaver here:
	 Managing JDBC DataSource Aliases for SAP NetWeaver 7.3
	 Managing JDBC DataSource Aliases for SAP NetWeaver 7.3 EHP1
	 Managing JDBC DataSource Aliases for SAP NetWeaver 7.4
	Managing JDBC DataSource Aliases for SAP NetWeaver 7.5
Driver Name	Select the JDBC driver that you have deployed in the previous step.
SQL Engine	Choose Vendor SQL for Oracle, IBM DB2 and SAP ASE.
Isolation Level	Select Transaction Read Commited.
JDBC Version	Make sure that the 1.x JDBC version is selected.
Driver Class Name	Fill in the driver class:
	 oracle.jdbc.driver.OracleDriver for Oracle com.ibm.db2.jcc.DB2Driver for IBM DB2 com.sybase.jdbc4.jdbc.SybDriver for SAP ASE
Database URL	Provide the correct database URL:
	 For Oracle: jdbc:oracle:thin:@<host>:<port>:< SID> (e.g. jdbc:oracle:thin:@10.55.165.63:1521:orcl)</port></host> For IBM DB2: jdbc:db2://<server>:<port>/</port></server> <prefix>_DB:currentSchema=<prefix>_OPER;curren tFunctionPath=<prefix>_OPER;maxStatements=100; retrieveMessagesFromServerOnGetMessage=true;</prefix></prefix></prefix>

Name of the Field	Value/Comments	
	i Note When using IBM DB2, make sure the <prefix>_OPER user in the database URL is in uppercase letters.</prefix>	
	 For example: jdbc:db2://MyServer:52222/ IC_DB:currentSchema=IC_OPER;currentFunctionPath =IC_OPER;maxStatements=100;retrieveMessagesFro mServerOnGetMessage=true; For SAP ASE: jdbc:sybase:Tds:<host>:<port>/ <prefix>_db</prefix></port></host> 	
User Name	Enter the admin user name that you use to log in to the database server. For example, <prefix>_admin (for example MXMC_admin or IC_admin).</prefix>	
Password	Provide the password of the provisioning user defined in the User Name field.	

2.5.10 Configuring the Java System Properties

You can change the settings or properties of your SAP NetWeaver AS Java, or of the applications and services that are deployed on your SAP NetWeaver AS Java.

To configure the properties of the deployed Identity Management Developer Studio service and Identity Management REST Interface version 2 on your SAP NetWeaver AS Java, follow the descriptions of how to manage the properties in Java System Properties tool for your SAP NetWeaver version:

- Java System Properties for SAP NetWeaver 7.3
- Java System Properties for SAP NetWeaver 7.3 EHP1
- Java System Properties for SAP NetWeaver 7.4
- Java System Properties for SAP NetWeaver 7.5

Identity Management Developer Studio service

Log on to SAP NetWeaver Administrator and choose Configuration Infrastructure Java System Properties Applications Configure the following properties for the *idmdevstudio* application (service):

Properties for idmdevstudio application (service)

Property	Value
com.sap.idm.rcp.crypt.keyfile	A full path to the file holding the 3DES keys, that is, the Keys.ini file. For example: /sapmnt/ <sapsid>/ global/security/data/Key/Keys.ini, where <sapsid> is the SAP system ID of SAP Identity Manage- ment system.</sapsid></sapsid>
	i Note
	The value of this property must be the same in the SAP NetWeaver Config Tool. Make sure you have provided the same path to the Keys.ini file, you have saved your configuration and restarted the idmdevstudio ap- plication.
	For more information about the Keys . ini file, see SAP Identity Management Security Guide.
com.sap.idm.rcp.dsehome.java	Path to sapjvm 8, unless you are using Java 8 by default.
com.sap.idm.rcp.jdbcdriverjar	Path to the JDBC driver JAR file, for exam- ple, <ase_install_directory>/jConnect-16_0/ classes/jconn4.jar. This can also be a list of paths (to several JDBC driver JAR files). List items are separated by : in Unix/Linux based systems.</ase_install_directory>
com.sap.idm.rcp.jdbcdrivers	A list of JDBC driver names.
	For example, oracle.jdbc.driver.Oracle- Driver;com.ibm.db2.jcc.DB2Driver;com.sap.db.jdbc.Driver;c om.sybase.jdbc4.jdbc.SybDriver.
	i Note List items are separated by : in Unix/Linux based sys- tems.
com.sap.idm.rcp.dsehome	The path relative to which the runtime en- gine is found, by default /usr/sap/ <sapsid>/ IDM<instance_number>/Identity_Center. Needed for data discovery purposes.</instance_number></sapsid>

Property	Value
com.sap.idm.rcp.multicheckouts	Controls whether multiple users are allowed to check out one and the same configuration package.
	• <i>False</i> - Only one user is allowed to check out a package and work on its configuration. This is the default value.
	• <i>True</i> - Multiple users are allowed to check out a package and work simultaneously on its configuration.
	i Note
	Be careful when setting this property to <i>True</i> . We do not recommend multiple users to check out one and the same package. If multiple users modify one and the same package object, (for example, a process) they will override each other's changes.
	i Note
	The first user who checks in the package, checks in (saves) the changes of all the users that checked out this package.
	i Note
	Allowing multiple users to check out one and the same package is suitable for systems that are up- graded from version 7.2. In this case, all configu- rations are placed into one default package that needs to be restructured manually into multiple packages.

Identity Management REST Interface Version 2

Log on to SAP NetWeaver Administrator and choose Configuration Infrastructure Java System Properties Applications Configure the following properties for the *tc~idm~rest~ear* application:

Properties for restapi-ear application

Property	Value
v2AllowHttp	You can configure SAP Identity Management REST Interface v2 to use HTTP or HTTPS communication.
	• <i>false</i> - Allows HTTPS communication. This is the default value.
	→ Recommendation For security reasons, it is recommended to you use HTTPS communication.
	 For more information how to configure the Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) on your SAP NetWeaver AS Java, see Using the HTTP Security (Secure Sockets Layer/ SSL) [page 123] <i>true</i> - Allows HTTP communication.
v2ReturnNullValuesInResponse	Controls if null value is returned in the response body for single-value attributes that do not contain value.
	 true - null value is returned for single-value attributes that do not contain value. This is the default value. false - null value is not returned for single-value attributes that do not contain value.

Related Information

Initial Configuration of Identity Management Developer Studio [page 126] SAP Identity Management Security Guide

2.5.11 Using the HTTP Security (Secure Sockets Layer/SSL)

Security between the Identity Management Developer Studio service and client, as well as the Identity Management REST Interface Version 2 is done by securing the web server (your SAP NetWeaver AS for Java). Make sure to use HTTPS to secure the connection.

Prerequisites

To configure the use of Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) on your SAP NetWeaver AS for Java, you would need the following:

- Administrator rights for the SAP NetWeaver AS for Java server
- SAP Cryptographic Library installed (see *Installing the SAP Cryptographic Library for SSL* for your SAP NetWeaver AS for Java version for details)

Configuring Transport Layer Security on SAP NetWeaver AS for Java

To configure the transport layer security (TLS), commonly referred to as SSL, on your SAP NetWeaver AS for Java, follow the descriptions of SSL configuration for your SAP NetWeaver version (see *Related Information*).

You can use the SSL configuration tool in the SAP NetWeaver Administrator to add a new SSL access point (port). See *Adding New SSL Access Points* for your SAP NetWeaver AS for Java version for details.

Following the processes for adding the SSL access point (port) on your SAP NetWeaver AS for Java, pay special attention to the following fields (and apply the values listed):

Name of the Field	Value/Comments
Protocol	Select <i>HTTPS</i> as the protocol for the new port.
Client Authentication Mode	Select the mode <i>Do Not Request</i> .
Keystore View Name	Select option <i>Instance Default</i> , to use the default server key pair and trusted CA certificates.

Upon creation of the new access point, the SSL configuration tool creates a keystore view for the specified port. If the default SAP NetWeaver AS for Java port for SSL communications (port 50001) is used, the corresponding keystore view will be *ICM_SSL_<instance_ID>*. If other port number is used for the SSL communications, the corresponding keystore view will be *ICM_SSL_<instance_ID>*. If other port number is used for the SSL communications, the corresponding keystore view will be *ICM_SSL_<instance_ID>*. If other port number is used for the SSL communications, the server key pair and trusted CA certificates to use for this port.

Exporting and Installing the SSL X.509 Certificate

To ensure properly working secure SSL communications, the SSL server's (SAP NetWeaver AS Java's) certificate should be exported from the SAP NetWeaver Administrator and imported to the keystore used

by the client Identity Management Developer Studio. Modifying the client's keystore, you are making the client trust the server thus enabling secure communication.

For details on how to export and install the certificate, see Exporting and Installing the SSL Certificate.

Configuring the Identity Management Developer Studio for HTTPS Connection

When configuring connections and the application server configuration in the Identity Management Developer Studio client, make sure to provide the port number defined as the SSL access point in the SAP NetWeaver Administrator. For details see *Initial Configuration of the Identity Management Developer Studio*.

Related Information

Exporting and Installing the SSL Certificate [page 125] Initial Configuration of Identity Management Developer Studio [page 126] SAP NetWeaver 7.3 Configuring Transport Layer Security on SAP NetWeaver AS for Java Installing the SAP Cryptographic Library for SSL Adding New SSL Access Points SAP NetWeaver 7.3 EHP1 Configuring Transport Layer Security on SAP NetWeaver AS for Java Installing the SAP Cryptographic Library for SSL Adding New SSL Access Points SAP NetWeaver 7.4 Configuring Transport Layer Security on SAP NetWeaver AS for Java Installing the SAP Cryptographic Library for SSL Adding New SSL Access Points SAP NetWeaver 7.5 Configuring Transport Layer Security on SAP NetWeaver AS for Java Installing the SAP Cryptographic Library for SSL

Adding New SSL Access Points

2.5.11.1 Exporting and Installing the SSL Certificate

The SSL server's (SAP NetWeaver AS Java's) certificate should be exported from the SAP NetWeaver Administrator and imported to the keystore used by the client Identity Management Developer Studio. Modifying the client's keystore, you are making the client trust the server thus enabling secure communication.

Context

The certificate must be imported to the keystore of every Identity Management Developer Studio client that needs to be communicating securely with the server. To export and correctly install the SSL certificate, proceed with the following steps:

Procedure

- 1. Start the SSL configuration tool in the SAP NetWeaver Administrator by following the path Configuration Management Security SSL .
- 2. Select the added SSL access point (port) in the SSL Access Points section. The details of the selected port will be displayed.
- 3. From the *Server Identity* tab for the SSL port, select the private key entry and choose *Export Entry* to export the server's certificate directly from its private key entry.
- 4. In the Export Entry to File dialog box, select export format PKCS#8 Key Pair.

Two files will be produced, a PKCS#8 key pair file and an X.509 certificate file (for example sslcredentials-cert1.crt). Download the certificate file and store it in the same directory as the client keystore (i.e. the cacerts file of the Identity Management Developer Studio). The location of the keystore (the cacerts file) depends on the location of your Java Virtual Machine, by default <JAVA_HOME>\jre\lib\security\cacerts.

i Note

A way to locate the <JAVA_HOME> path for the Java your Identity Management Developer Studio is using, is described in the following Eclipse documentation: Find the JVM *P*.

5. Now that the certificate is downloaded, import it to client's keystore cacerts by using the keytool utility. In a command prompt, navigate to the directory <JAVA_HOME>\jre\lib\security\ and use the following command: keytool -import -alias <local certificate name> -file <certificate file> -keystore cacerts. For example: keytool -import -alias my_ssl_cert -file ssl-credentials-cert1.crt -keystore cacerts.

i Note

Make sure you are able to access the keytool utility from the above mentioned directory. The utility is by default located in <JAVA_HOME>\bin\ directory.

You will be asked to provide a keystore password. The initial password of the cacerts keystore is *changeit*. System administrators should change the password and the default access permissions of that file after installing the SDK.

You are asked if you trust the certificate you are about to import. Type \mathbf{y} and press Enter and the certificate will be added to the client keystore cacerts.

2.5.12 Initial Configuration of Identity Management Developer Studio

Once the SAP Identity Management Developer Studio plugin is installed in your Eclipse environment and the perspective is opened, you would need some initial configuration in order to access the Identity Management database and the identity store(s).

Context

To initially configure the Identity Management Developer Studio, proceed with the following steps:

Procedure

- 1. From the main menu, select:
 - For Linux, Window Preferences .
 - For Mac OS X, Eclipse IDE for Lean DI Developers Preferences .
- 2. Expand SAP Identity Management and select Connections in the menu on the left.
- 3. Add a connection to the Identity Management database by choosing +, then enter a name and optionally a description for the connection.
- 4. Choose *OK* to add the connection to the list.
- 5. Enter the details in the *Application Server Configuration* section:

Preferences		
type filter text	Connections	↓ ↓ ↓ ▼
 General Ant Help Install/Update Java Plug-in Development Run/Debug SAP Identity Management Global Settings Logging Team 	SAP Identity Management databases + - IDM_SQLServer IDM_Oracle IDM_DB2	Application Server Configuration Application Server: localhost Port: 50001 DataSource: IDM_DataSource_DevStudio
		Restore Defaults Apply
?		OK Cancel

Fill in the following fields:

Option	Description
Application Server	Enter the IP address or the name of the application server (e.g. localhost or 10.66.185.255).
Port	When you have configured the use of SSL (HTTPS) on your SAP NetWeaver Application Server Java, make sure to here provide the SSL (HTTPS) port number.
	i Note If you are running through proxy, define the SSL (HTTPS) port as an allowed port.
	For more details see, Using the HTTP Security (Secure Sockets Layer/SSL) [page 123] and Exporting and Installing the SSL Certificate [page 125].
DataSource	Enter the name of the created data source for your Identity Management database. The name of the data source should be the same as the one you have configured in SAP NetWeaver Administrator under Configuration Infrastructure Application Resources.

- 6. Choose *Apply* and then *OK* to close the dialog box.
- 7. Select the *Root* node in the tree view. Select *Refresh* from the context menu, and then expand the node.
- 8. Expand the node for the Identity Management database in the tree view. Provide the credentials for the initial administrator user for Identity Management Developer Studio to login.

i Note

The initial administrator user for Identity Management Developer Studio is created when creating/ updating to the Identity Management 8.0 database. To be able to login and access the Identity Management database in your Identity Management Developer Studio client, you must make sure that this user also exists in the User Management Engine (UME) and is assigned the idm_authenticated_studio UME action. See *Creating the Developer Administrator User in UME* for details.

i Note

If you are experiencing any issues with displaying the characters in your Identity Management Developer Studio, you should use the Java System Properties tool for your SAP NetWeaver version to specify the UTF-8 encoding for your system (add a JVM parameter on your instance). For more information see *Configuring the Java System Properties*.

i Note

If you are experiencing issues with the data discovery in your Identity Management Developer Studio, due to the connection string not being correctly defined or not defined at all, you encounter the following error message: JDBC_URL global variable is not configured properly. Please use dispatcher utility to do that.. For details on how to define the connection string correctly see Defining the Settings for the Identity Management Dispatcher Utility.

Next Steps

Once the Identity Management database in your Identity Management Developer Studio client is accessed, and its node in the tree view expanded, you need to create an identity store for your data. For details, see *Adding the Initial Identity Store*.

Related Information

Creating the Developer Administrator User in UME [page 129] Configuring the Java System Properties [page 119] Defining the Settings for the Identity Management Dispatcher Utility [page 107] Adding the Initial Identity Store [page 131]

2.5.12.1 Creating the Developer Administrator User in UME

The initial developer administrator user for Identity Management Developer Studio needs to exist both in the database and in the User Management Engine (UME), to be able to log on to the Identity Management Developer Studio.

Context

The initial developer administrator for Identity Management Developer Studio is created when the Identity Management Core component is installed with SWPM. For this user, you have provided a name in the SAP Identity Management Database Users dialog (under) SAP Identity Management Database Development User Administrator User). See the example below:

		,
Software Provisioning Manager		Legend
1 2 Define Review Parameters Parameters	3 4 Execute Service Service Completed	
SAP Identity Management	t Database Users	
Enter the parameters for the SAP Identity	Management database users.	
SAP Identity Management Database	Administration Users	
Account MXMC2 oper		
*Password		
*Confirm		
Account: MXMC2_admin		
*Password		
*Confirm		
Account: MXMC2_user		
*Password		
*Confirm		
Account: MXMC2_rt		
*Password		
*Confirm		
Account: MXMC2_prov		
*Password		
*Confirm		
SAP Identity Management Database	Development User	
Account: Developer Administrator Use	r	
*Name	Administrator	

The initial developer administrator user needs to exist both in the Identity Management database and in the UME, to be able to log on to the Identity Management Developer Studio. This means that you need to manually

create the initial developer administrator user for Identity Management Developer Studio in the UME, with a corresponding password.

i Note

The initial developer administrator user must be named the same in both the database and the UME.

The user also needs the idm_authenticated_studio UME action assigned to it through a UME role.

Procedure

- Log on to SAP NetWeaver Administrator at http(s)://<host>:<port>/nwa and navigate to
 Configuration > Identity Management >.
- 2. Create the user as a technical user, following the description for your SAP NetWeaver version.

SAP NetWeaver Version	Description
SAP NetWeaver 7.3	For details on how to create the user in the UME, see Creating a Technical User
SAP NetWeaver 7.3 EHP1	For details on how to create the user in the UME, see Creating a Technical User.
SAP NetWeaver 7.4	For details on how to create the user in the UME, see Creating a Technical User.
SAP NetWeaver 7.5	For details on how to create the user in the UME, see Creating a Technical User

3. Assign the idm_authenticated_studio UME action to the user. Proceed with one of the following options:

- On the Assigned Roles tab page, assign the idm.developer or the Administrator role to the user. Both roles contain the idm_authenticated_studio action.
- Assign the idm_authenticated_studio action to another role of your choice and then assign the role to this user.
- 4. Choose Save.

Results

All users with assigned idm_authenticated_studio UME action are able to log on to the Identity Management Developer Studio.

2.5.12.2 Adding the Initial Identity Store

The first time you are accessing the Identity Management Developer Studio and the Identity Management database, there will be no identity store. The only exception to this is when you upgrade your entire existing system from version 7.2 to 8.0. In this case, every identity store from your 7.2 system is migrated into your 8.0 system. The identity store contains its own default package that must be expanded.

You need to add an identity store. You have the following options:

- Create a new identity store. For more information, see Adding an Identity Store. Once the identity store is created, you can continue with importing the configuration packages from the directory where you have unpacked the Core component. For more information, see Unpacking the Core Component
- Import an already existing identity store(s) into your Identity Management Developer Studio. This is only relevant for an upgrade scenario when you install SAP Identity Management 8.0 as a side box and move the configuration and data from your 7.2 system. Only identity stores from a 7.2 system can be exported and then imported into the Identity Management Developer Studio.

To import an existing identity store, select the Identity Management database node in the tree view and choose *Import...* from the context menu.

2.5.13 Defining the JDBC Connection for the JMX Layer

In order to be able to retrieve data from the identity store, the JMX layer of the Identity Management User Interface needs a JDBC data source pointing to the Identity Management database.

Before creating the JDBC data source, make sure that a database driver is installed.

i Note

If operating with multiple Java nodes the driver needs to be installed on all these.

i Note

The JDBC driver you use must be compatible with the SAP JVM of your SAP NetWeaver version. For example, SAP NetWeaver 7.3 is compatible with SAP JVM 6.1 (JDK 1.6). This means that you cannot use JDBC driver version higher than 4.0.

The procedures may be different, depending on what database system you are using. The procedures are the same for all database systems unless stated otherwise in this document.

To set up the connection for the supported SAP NetWeaver version, use SAP NetWeaver Administrator.

To access the SAP NetWeaver Administrator, do the following:

- 1. Enter http(s)://<host>:<port> in your browser, which will take you to your index page.
- 2. Then select SAP NetWeaver Administrator. Or you can just enter http(s)://<host>:<port>/nwa in your browser. Both procedures will display the login page for the SAP NetWeaver Administrator.



3. Enter the credentials, the correct user ID and the password.

2.5.13.1 Deploying the JDBC Driver

Follow the descriptions on how to deploy the drivers for your SAP NetWeaver version. See the Related Information for details.

\mathbf{i} Note

Even though specifying an arbitrary name for your driver entry (such as myDriver) will be sufficient, it is recommended to give the driver a logical name, for example, ORACLE, DB2.

Related Information

Managing JDBC Drivers for SAP NetWeaver 7.3 Managing JDBC Drivers for SAP NetWeaver 7.3 EHP1 Managing JDBC Drivers for SAP NetWeaver 7.4 Managing JDBC Drivers for SAP NetWeaver 7.5

2.5.13.2 Adding the Identity Management Database as a Data Source

To create the data source, follow the descriptions of managing the JDBC data sources for your SAP NetWeaver version.

i Note

You have to choose the JDBC version 1.x when creating a JDBC data source in the AS Java. It is important to emphasize that the mentioned JDBC version is not related to the version of the JDBC driver you are using. You may use all supported JDBC driver versions for the supported databases.

- Managing JDBC DataSources for SAP NetWeaver 7.3
- Managing JDBC DataSources for SAP NetWeaver 7.3 EHP1
- Managing JDBC DataSources for SAP NetWeaver 7.4
- Managing JDBC DataSources for SAP NetWeaver 7.5

Following the above mentioned processes for adding the Identity Management database as a data source, pay special attention to the following fields (and apply the values listed) in the *Settings* tab:

Name of the field	Value
Data Source Name	Name the data source <i>IDM_DataSource</i> (must be in this exact casing). If you choose to name the data source differently, then you must create alias IDM_Data-Source for the data source. Read more about creating and managing aliases here:
	 Managing JDBC DataSource Aliases for SAP NetWeaver 7.3 Managing JDBC DataSource Aliases for SAP NetWeaver 7.3 EHP1 Managing JDBC DataSource Aliases for SAP NetWeaver 7.4 Managing JDBC DataSource Aliases for SAP NetWeaver 7.5
Driver Name	Select the JDBC driver.
SQL Engine	Choose Vendor SQL for Oracle, IBM DB2 and SAP ASE.
Isolation Level	Select Transaction Read Commited.
JDBC Version	Make sure that the 1.x JDBC version is selected.
Driver Class Name	 Fill in the driver class: oracle.jdbc.driver.OracleDriver for Oracle com.ibm.db2.jcc.DB2Driver for IBM DB2
	 com.sybase.jdbc4.jdbc.SybDriver

Name of the field	Value
Database URL	Provide the correct database URL:
	For Oracle: jdbc:oracle:thin:@ <host>:<port>:<database sid=""></database></port></host>
	For example: jdbc:oracle:thin:@10.55.165.63:1521:orcl
	<pre>For IBM DB2: jdbc:db2://<server>:<port>/ <prefix>_DB:currentSchema=<prefix>_OPER;currentFunctio nPath=<prefix>_OPER;maxStatements=100;retrieveMes sagesFromServerOnGetMessage=true;</prefix></prefix></prefix></port></server></pre>
	i Note When using IBM DB2, make sure the <prefix>_Oper user in the database URL is in uppercase letters.</prefix>
	For example: jdbc:db2://MyServer:52222/ IC_DB:currentSchema=IC_OPER;currentFun ctionPath=IC_OPER;maxStatements=100;retrieveMessagesFr omServerO nGetMessage=true;
	<pre>For SAP ASE: jdbc:sybase:Tds:<host>:<port>/<prefix>_db</prefix>_db_db_db_db_db</port></host></pre>
User Name	Enter the user name that you use to log in to the database server, the provisioning user. For example: <pre>cycle content of the server of the</pre>
Password	Provide the password of the provisioning user defined in the User Name field.

2.5.13.3 Updating the Data Source

Context

If you need to update the data source information (e.g. changes in server, database, password etc), do the following:

Procedure

- 1. In the SAP NetWeaver Administrator, go to Configuration Management Infrastructure Application Resources.
- 2. Select JDBC Custom DataSources in the Show field to list all created data sources:

🖉 SAD NetWeaver Administrator - Microsoft Internet Funlarer			
Sila Edit View Exvertes Tools Help			
The For Tiew Lightunes Tons Tieth			
🕒 Back 🔹 🕑 👻 📓 🎧 🔎 Search 🎌 Favorites 🐇 🔯 🖉	Ş 🛃 📙 🗱 🦄		
Address 🕘 http://	ui~mainframe~wd/FloorPlanApp?applicati	onID=com.sap.itsam.cfg.java.app.resources8isLocal=	=true 💽 💽 Go 🛛 Links 🌺
Application Resources: Overview		Home History Good 5	Hole Log Off
Application Resources: Overview		TIGHTE THREETY DOCKT	orward <u>neip</u> <u>cog.on</u>
			Related Links
Show JDBC Custom DataSources			
Resource List			
Create New Recource , Delete Selected Recource Refrach			
State Resource Name	Resource Type	Owner Name	Owner Tyne
DM	JDBC Custom Data Source	sap.com/sap.com~IDM	J2EE Application
IDM_DataSource	JDBC Custom Data Source	sap.com/JDBCConnector_IDM_DataSource.xml	J2EE Application
Describte States. 🖶 Eulty susidable 🛆 Badhy susidable 🍎 blak susidable 🛆 Usinesus			
Resource Details			EIC
IDDC Curden Data Carrier			
Source			
Settings Connection Pooling Additional Properties Antecedent JDBC Drive	er / Dependent Data Source Aliases		
Driver Name: * SQL2005			
SQL Engine: * Netive SQL			
Isolation Lever: * Iransaction Read Commited			
UDDC Yession [1X (Without AA support)			
Detabase LIRL * idlo: soleserver (tryl0050000 avample com detab	asa-myme dh		
User Name: * mxmc prov	000 mmo_00		
Password: *			
Description			
2A			
			Local Intranet

Find and select the data source you need to update. This will display the resource details in the *Resource Details* section (below the *Resource List* section).

- 3. Update the data and choose Save to save the changes.
- 4. An information dialog box appears confirming that the data source has been saved successfully. Choose *Close* to close the dialog box.

2.5.14 Configuring the JMX Layer

This section describes how to change the settings, like configuring the cache, defining which identity store you are working on and configuring the encryption key-file.

Context

The procedure is the same for the supported SAP NetWeaver versions.

To alter the configuration, proceed as follows:

Procedure

1. In the SAP NetWeaver Administrator, go to Configuration Infrastructure .

🚰 SAP NetWeaver Administrator - Microsoft Internet Explorer	
Eile Edit View Favorites Iools Help	
🔾 Back 🔹 🕥 🗸 📓 🏠 🔎 Search 🤺 Favorites 🚱 😥 🤤 🛄 🎇	, 🚳
Address 🕘 http://	jation~wd/NWAApp 🗾 🔁 Go 🛛 Links 🌺
Welcome Administrator, Active Profile: Complete List	Quick Links Personalize Log Off
	Search: Go
Availability and Performance Management Operation Management Configuration Management Problem	Management SOA Management
Security Infrastructure Scenarios Processes and Tasks Connectivity	
Adobe Document Services Configure and manage the Adobe document services (credentials, trusted anchors, certificate revocation lists, license information, caches, job profiles)	Application Modules This is a solution that contains details of the deployed applications as well as several types of modules (e.gWeb and EJB modules) where configuration settings can be viewed and attered.
Actilization Resources The Application Resources The Application Resources plug-in provides functionality to create, manage and delete external resources such as JDBC drivers, JDBC data sources, resource adapters, connection factories and others. The administrator can view all resources or choose a specific resource type and select a resource from the resources list. He can view its details and the details of all antecedent and dependent resources.	Aver Configuration Browser Such a browser offers a detailed view of the configuration settings on the selected Java systems with all the property sheets and source files. This is an informative view only. To change the configuration of a system use the configuration editor view of the local configuration tool.
Destinations Applications or services can establish connections to other services. When using such connections, you need to specify the remote service's address and the user authentication information to use for the connection. Many applications use the Destination service for this purpose.	Ava HITP Provider Configuration Virtual Host can act as several different Web servers responding to different URLs, but referring only to a single real P address. A user can gain flexibility by providing different configuration settings for each of the virtual hosts that can be both created and configured. Logon load balancing increases the efficiency of various workgroups. To improve performance and system resource consumption users are distributed across available
Languages and Time Zones references.	application servers based on the requirements of workgroup service and load sensitivity.
Loc RFC Provider The JCo RFC Provider Service processes ABAP to Java requests, and dispatches the calls to Java applications. So, seen from an ABAP system, it provides an RFC destination. Technically, the service is based on the JCo (SAP Java Connector). In order to receive calls from ABAP, JCo Servers are started and registered at the gateways of the ABAP systems. The configuration of these JCo servers is done here.	You can use the Java Class Loader Viewer to view the information the Application Server Java provides about the class loader scurrently available and to diagnose problems on a technical level. For each Class Loader the viewer displays: name, parent, referees, references and resources (JAR files, directories with class files and resources, and so on). You can search for a specific class loader based on its component type (application, common, interface, library, service) or using part of its name.
Licenses Hanage licenses installed on the system.	Configure the JMS server.
Message Server The Message Server plug-in provides functionality for inspecting the Message Server parameters and settings.	Loa Configuration The Log Configuration plug-in provides functionality for inspecting the log configuration, changing the severity of log controllers and resetting the current log configuration to the default one.
Session Management The Session Management provide management and monitoring of session data in the server including Security Sessions, Http Sessions and stateful ejo objects.	Services Registry Management Manage the UDDI Server and the Services Registry configuration settings (e.g. security, publishing, replication, optimization)
System Information provides administrators with an overview of the system configuration. It shows all of the system's instances and their important parameters (such as ports) that may be required for support cases, as well as the versions of the components installed.	SLD Data Supplier Configuration The SLD Data Supplier service registers the Application Server Java in the System Landscape Directory (SLD) and provides access to SLD for other Java EE applications
Trusted Systems You can use the trusted systems configuration in order to maintain the relationship between issuing and accepting systems.	error a system rule rule rule rule rule rule rule rule
	V
<u>e</u>	Local intranet

2. Select Java System Properties.

Edit View Favorites Tools Help					
Back + 🕥 - 💌 🛃 🔥 💭	Search 🔶 Favorites 🚱 😞 😓 🥅 📶 🎇				
		- Develoption TD		and the state of the second states	- - -
	webdynprojalspaccherjsap.com/cc~im~icsam~ul~mainrrame~wojHoorPlanA	pprapplication1D=com.sap.i	tsam.crg.java.systi	empropercies&isLocal=crue	
ava System Properti	ies: Overview		Home	History Back Forward	Help Log Off
					Related Link
mplates					E
instance_development					
tails					E
Cernel Services Applications	VM Environment Memory VM Parameters System VM Parame	ters Additional VM Pa	rameters		
					V
Name					1
Name Z					
Name ApplicationThreadManager					
Name ApplicationThreadManager CacheManager					
Name ApplicationThreadManager CacheManager ClassLoaderManager					
Name ApplicationThreadManager CacheManager ClassLoaderManager ClusterManager ClusterManager ClusterManager					
Name ApplicationThreadManager CacheManager ClassLoaderManager ClusterManager ConfigurationManager					
Name ApplicationThreadManager CacheManager ClassLoaderManager ClusterManager ConfigurationManager					
Name ApplicationThreadManager CacheManager ClassLoaderManager ClusterManager ConfigurationManager tended Details					
Name ApplicationThreadManager CacheManager ClassLoaderManager ClusterManager ClusterManager configurationManager tended Details roperties					
Name ApplicationThreadManager CacheManager ClassLoaderManager ClusterManager ClusterManager ConfigurationManager tended Details Yoperties					
Name ApplicationThreadManager CacheManager ClassLoaderManager ClassLoaderManager ClusterManager ContigurationManager tended Details roperties Show Details					
Name ApplicationThreadManager CacheManager ClassLoaderManager ClusterManager ContigurationManager tended Details Yoperties Show Details Name	Default Value	Modifiable	Custom Valu	ие	
Name ApplicationThreadManager CacheManager ClassLoaderManager ClusterManager ConfigurationManager tended Details rooperties Show Details Name B	Default Value	Modifiable	Custom Vak	18	E :
Name ApplicationThreadManager CacheManager ClassLoaderManager ConfigurationManager tended Details reporties Show Details Nome Cucterid CacheManager	Defautt Value \$link(, JCluster/properties≢element.clusterki)	Modifiable	Custom Vak	ие	
Name ApplicationThreadManager CacheManager ClassLoaderManager ClassLoaderManager ConfigurationManager ConfigurationManager Properties Show Details Name β Clusterid ExecutorPoolMaxSize	Default Value Şiink(/.Cluster/properties≢element.clusterid) 60	Modifiable	Custom Vak	ие	
Name ApplicationThreadManager CacheManager ClassLoaderManager ClusterManager ConfigurationManager tended Details Yoperties Show Details Name β Clusterid ExecutorPoolMaxSize InitialThreadCount	Default Value Slink(_/.J.Cluster/properties#element.clusterki) 80 40	Modifiable	Custom Vak	ue	
Name ApplicationThreadManager CacheManager ClassLoaderManager ClusterManager ContigurationManager ContigurationManager Ctended Details Toperties Show Detais Name Clusterid ExecutorPoolMaxSize InitialThreadCount MaxRQSize InitialThreadCount	Default Value \$link(././Cluster/properties#element.cluster/d) 60 40 5000	Modifiable	Custom Val	le	

3. Select the *Applications* tab in the *Details* section.

Edit View Favorites Tools Help					
Back 🔹 🕥 👻 💌 😰 🏠 🔎 Search	👷 Favorites 🚱 🖌 🕞				
ess 🙆 http://	ispatcher/sap.com/tc~lm~itsam~ui~m	ainframe~wd/FloorPlanApp?a	pplica 🔻 🔁 Go 🛛 Lini	s 🛃 Google 🍺 SAP Corporate Portal	
ava System Properti	es: Overview		t	ome History Back Forward	Help Log Off
					Related Links
					Trefated Elling
mplates					EL
instance_development					
					6
					E
tails					E
ernel Services Applications	VM Environment Memory VM	Parameters System VM	A Parameters Addition	nal VM Parameters	
					<u>M</u>
Name		Vendor			_
to-graphics-jnet-ep		sap.com			
to-idm/investor		sap.com			_
to idm/jinx app		sap.com			
tc~idm~jmx~ump		sap.com			
ended Details					E
openies					
Save As Restore Default Modify Show	/ Details				7
Name	Default Value		Modifiable	Custom Value	
1					
com.sap.idm.jmx.ac_check_level	0		✓		
com.sap.idm.jmx.cache.ttl	60		✓		
com.sap.idm.jmx.crypt.keyfile			\checkmark		
	MXIDMUI		v		
com.sap.idm.jmx.idstore.reqidprefix	1		V		
com.sap.idm.jmx.idstore.reqidprefix com.sap.idm.jmx.idstoreid			\checkmark		
com.sap.idm.jmx.idstore.reqidprefix com.sap.idm.jmx.idstoreid com.sap.idm.jmx.show_selfservice	true				
com.sap.idm.jmx.idstore.reqidprefix com.sap.idm.jmx.idstoreid com.sap.idm.jmx.show_selfservice	true				
com.sap.idm.jmx.idstore.reqidprefix com.sap.idm.jmx.idstoreid com.sap.idm.jmx.show_selfservice	true				
com.sap.idm.jmx.idstore.reqidprefix com.sap.idm.jmx.idstoreid com.sap.idm.jmx.show_selfservice	true				

4. Find and select the *tc~idm~jmx~app*. In the *Extended Details* section, you can see the following properties:

Property	Description
com.sap.idm.jmx.ac_check_level	This property is used to specify how to display task fold- ers in the Identity Management User Interface improving performance for task access control. By using this mecha- nism the initial display of the folders in the task selector will be optimized, but depending on the setting, empty folders may be shown. Possible values are:
	 8: Displays all available task folders. No access control rules are enforced while displaying the task folders. 4: Performs a check to decide if the task(s) in a folder are applicable to the selected entry type. This is the recommended value in a production system.
	 2: Performs a check to decide if the task(s) in a folder are applicable to the selected entry type and if the current user is allowed to see them. This does not check if the user is allowed to execute the task(s) on the selected entry.
	 0: Performs a full check of all the folders and tasks in the task tree, including the following: If the task(s) in a folder are applicable to the selected entry type
	 If the current user is allowed to see them If the current user is allowed to execute the task(s) on the selected entry. This is the default value.
	i Note
	The recommended property value for optimal performance in a production system is 4 . There is a chance that empty folders are initially displayed but regardless of the property value, full access check (property value 0) is always performed for tasks. Thus, only those tasks that the user is allowed to execute are displayed.
com.sap.idm.jmx.cache.ttl	This is time-to-live for the elements in the cache. Set to 60 minutes by default.
	i Note

The cache property set to 60 minutes is recommended for the production systems. To achieve more reactive system behaviour in a development/test system, set the value to 1 or 2 minutes.

Property	Description
com.sap.idm.jmx.crypt.keyfile	A file holding the 3DES keys, that is, the Keys.ini file. Set the value to be the full path to the Keys.ini file. For example: /sapmnt/ <sapsid>/ global/security/data/Key/Keys.ini, where <sapsid> is the SAP system ID of SAP Identity Manage- ment system.</sapsid></sapsid>
	<pre>i Note The value of this property must be the same in the SAP NetWeaver Config Tool. Make sure you have provided the same path to the Keys.ini file, you have saved your configuration and restarted the tc~idm~jmx~app application.</pre>
com.sap.idm.jmx.idstore.reqidprefix	 This holds a string with a prefix for all the requests sent, identifying the application which owns requests – here MXIDMUI, used by the Identity Management User Interface. The string contains only letters a through z (upper or lower case) and the numbers 0 to 9. Application strings starting with MX are reserved. The following applications are defined: MXGRC: Used by the GRC integration. MXIDMUI: Used by the Identity Management User Interface. i Note Any application identifier may be defined as a user defined application identifier in a project, as long as it does not start with MX.
com.sap.idm.jmx.idstoreid	Identifier of the IDStore to log into.
com.sap.idm.jmx.show_selfservice	A Boolean property determining visibility of the <i>Self</i> <i>Services</i> tab in the User Interface. Set to true by default (i.e. the <i>Self Services</i> tab is visible by default).

5. To make changes to the configuration, select the property you wish to edit and change (e.g. com.sap.idm.jmx.idstoreid), and choose *Modify*.

deter implicit impl	🕽 Back 🝷 🕘 👻 😰 🏠 🔎 Search 😒	Favorites 🕢 😥 🕞				
Bene Hettory, their forwerd Hettory, their forwerd	dress 🥘 http://	atcher/sap.com/tc~lm~itsam~ui~mainfram	ne~wd/FloorPlanApp?app	ica 💌 🄁 Go 🛛	Links 😽 Google 🛛 🗃 SAP Corporate P	ortal
Image: Service: Applications VMEnvormment Memory VM Parameters System VM Parameters Additional VM Parameters Name Verdor Image: Service:	Java System Properties	: Overview			Home History Back For	ward <u>Help</u> Log Off
Femplates						Related Links
	emplates					E
Details Kernel Services Applications Vendor Vendor Services Services Applications Vendor Services	instance_development					
Details Kernel Services Applications VM Environment Memory VM Parameters System VM Parameters Additional VM Parameters Name Vendor Vendor <th></th> <th></th> <th></th> <th></th> <th></th> <th></th>						
Kerrel Services Applications VM Environment Memory VM Parameters Additional VM Parameters Name Vendor Name Vendor Coddin-jmx-rest-app sap.com to-idm-jmx-rest-app sap.com to-idm-war-model sap.com to-idm-war-model sap.com to-idm-war-model sap.com Properties Save As Pestore Default Mane Default Value Mane Default Value Mane Default Value Save As Pestore Default Mane Default Value Modify Save As Restore Default Modify Com.sap.idm.jmx.contek.tli 60 Com.sap.idm.jmx.ishow_setfservice Image: Com.sap.idm.jmx.ishow_setfservice Tue Image: Com.sap.idm.jmx.ishow_setfservice	etails					
Name Yendor to-ddm-inx-spp sap.com to-ddm-inx-rest-app sap.com to-ddm-inx-wanp sap.com to-dam-inx-wanp sap.com to-dam-inx-wanp sap.com to-dam-inx-wanp sap.com to-dam-inx-wanp sap.com to-dam-inx-wanp sap.com to-dam-inx-wanp file to-dam-inx-wanp sap.com to-dam-inx-wanp file to-dam inx-wanp file oom sap.idm.jmx.ac_heket Hi 60 oom sap.idm.jmx.idstorei intonon oom sap.idm.jmx.idstor	Kernel Services Applications	M Environment Memory VM Parame	eters System VM P	arameters Ad	lditional VM Parameters	
Name Vendor Ic-idm-jmx-rest-app Sap.com Ic-idm-jmx-unp sap.com Ic-idm-jmx-unp sap.com Ic-idm-jmx-unp sap.com Ic-idm-jmx-unp sap.com Ic-idm-jmx-unp sap.com Ic-idm-jmx-unp sap.com Ic-idm-work-model Ic-idm-work-model Ic-idm-work-model Ic-idm-work-model Ic-idm-work-model Ic-idmodel Ic-idm odel <tr< td=""><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr<>						
Name Vertifie Ver						
Image: sep interverse sep i	Name		Vendor			
to-idm-jmx-app sap.com to-idm-jmx-app sap.com to-idm-jmx-app sap.com to-idm-ymx-app sap.com sap.com sap.com	1P					
indirplice/res/app sap.com to-idm-yinx-unp sap.com sap.com sap.com sap.idm jmx.ids	to-idmeinveracteore		sap.com			
I o din juc ding juc din juc ding juc ding juc ding juc ding juc ding juc	tevidmeinveren		sap.com			
Indimoved workflow	to-idm-inv and		sap.com			
Extended Details Properties Save As Name Default Value Mane Default Value Modify Show Details Enter Custom Value: Enter Custom Value: Enter Custom Value: Save As Restore Default Modify Show Details Image: Consap.idm jmx. ac_check_level 0 cons.asp.idm jmx. corpet. Itel 0 cons.asp.idm jmx. idstoreid 1 cons.asp.idm jmx. idstoreid 1 cons.asp.idm jmx. show_selfservice true	tc~idm~wd~workflow		sap.com			
Image: Set of a constraint of a						
Image: Second Default Modify Show Default Show Default Enter Custom Value: Image: Second Default Image: Second D	xtended Details					EF
In the period p	Properties					
Enter Custom Value: [2] Name Default Value Modelifiable Set Cancel Set Com.sap.idm.jmx.ac_check_level 0 Image: Cancel Image: Cancel com.sap.idm.jmx.ac_check_level 0 Image: Cancel I						
Name Default Value Modifiable Set Cancel Image: Cancel	Save As Restore Default Modify Show De	tails			Enter Custom Value: 2	
Image: Constant information of the second	Name	Default Value		Modifiable	Set Cancel	
com.sap.idm.jmx.ac_check_level 0 Image: Com.sap.idm.jmx.cache.tll 60 Image: Com.sap.idm.jmx.cache.tll 60 Image: Com.sap.idm.jmx.cache.tll Image: Com.sap.idm.jmx.cache.tll Image: Com.sap.idm.jmx.cache.tll Image: Com.sap.idm.jmx.cache.tll Image: Com.sap.idm.jmx.cache.tll Image: Com.sap.idm.jmx.cache.tll Image: Com.sap.idm.jmx.idstore.regidprefix MXIDMUI Image: Com.sap.idm.jmx.idstore.tll Image: Com.sap.idm.jmx.idm.jmx.idm.jmx.idm.jmx.idm.jmx.idm.jmx.idm.jmx.idm.jmx.idm.jmx.idm.jmx.idm.jm	<u>F</u>					
com.sap.idm.jmx.cache.ttl 60 Image: Com.sap.idm.jmx.cache.ttl Image: Com.sap.idm.jmx.cache.ttl Image: Com.sap.idm.jmx.cache.ttl Image: Com.sap.idm.jmx.idstore.regidprefix MXIDMUI Image: Com.sap.idm.jmx.idstore.ttl Image: Com.sap.idm.jmx.idstore.	com.sap.idm.jmx.ac_check_level	0		1		
com.sap.idm.jmx.crypt.keyrile Image: Com.sap.idm.jmx.idstore.regidprefix MXIDMUI Image: Com.sap.idm.jmx.idstore.regidprefix MXIDMUI com.sap.idm.jmx.idstoreid 1 Image: Com.sap.idm.jmx.idstoreid Image: Com.sap.idm.jmx.idstoreid com.sap.idm.jmx.show_seifservice true Image: Com.sap.idm.jmx.show_seifservice	com.sap.idm.jmx.cache.ttl	60		\checkmark		
com.sap.idm.jmx.idstore.regidprefix MXIDMUI Image: Com.sap.idm.jmx.idstore.id 1 com.sap.idm.jmx.idstoreid 1 Image: Com.sap.idm.jmx.show_setfservice Image: Com.sap.idm.jmx.show_setfservice	com.sap.idm.jmx.crypt.keyfile			Image: A state of the state		
com.sep.idm.mx.idstoreid 1 com.sep.idm.jmx.show_selfservice true	com.sap.idm.jmx.idstore.regidprefix	MXIDMUI		Image: A start of the start		
com.sap.idm.jmx.show_selfservice true	com.sap.idm.jmx.idstoreid	1				
	com.sap.idm.jmx.show_selfservice	true		\checkmark		

6. Enter the custom value and choose Set to change it.

i Note

Changing the com.sap.idm.jmx.idstoreid property is used as an example of how to edit and change the properties in the JMX layer. The properties should only be changed if necessary. Here, the value 2 is used for demonstration purposes. Be sure to use the real identity store IDs from your Identity Center when editing the com.sap.idm.jmx.idstoreid property.

SAP NetWeaver Administrator - Microsoft Ir	iternet Explorer			
file <u>E</u> dit <u>V</u> iew F <u>a</u> vorites <u>T</u> ools <u>H</u> elp				
🕽 Back 🝷 🕤 👻 😰 🐔 🔎 Search 🚽	🕇 Favorites 🛛 🔗 🖓 🕞			
idress 🕘 http://	atcher/sap.com/tc~lm~itsam~ui~mainframe~wd/Fl	oorPlanApp?applica 💌 🔁 Go 🛛 Lin	ks 🔧 Google 🛛 🔬 SAP Corporate Portal	
Java System Properties	s: Overview	l	tome History Back Forward	Help Log Off
				Related Links
emplates				E
instance_development				
Details Kernel Services Applications 1	VM Environment Memory VM Parameters	System VM Parameters Additi	inal VM Parameters	E
		-,		_
Name		Vendor		
۲۶ territerine en				
to-idm-inv-rest-ann		sap.com		
to-idm-imx-ump		sap.com		
tc~idm~wd~model		sap.com		
tc~idm~wd~workflow		sap.com		-
xtended Details				E
Properties				
Save As Restore Default Modify Show De	stails			8
Name	Default Value	Modifiable	Custom Value	
م				
com.sap.idm.jmx.ac_check_level	0	\checkmark		
com.sap.idm.jmx.cache.ttl	60	\checkmark		
com.sap.idm.jmx.crypt.keyfile				
com.sap.idm.jmx.idstore.regidprefix			2	
com sen idm imy idstoreid	true	▼	-	
com.sap.idm.jmx.idstoreid	-			
com.sap.idm.jmx.idstoreid com.sap.idm.jmx.show_selfservice				
com.sap.idm.jmx.idstoreid com.sap.idm.jmx.show_selfservice				
com.sap.idm.jmx.idstoreid com.sap.idm.jmx.show_selfservice				

7. Choose *Save As* to confirm the change.

Related Information

SAP Identity Management Security Guide

2.5.15 Initial Configuration of Identity Management User Interface

Authentication of the users logging on to the Identity Management User Interface is done by the User Management Engine (UME). There are three URLs that can be used to access the Identity Management User Interface, where two of them are in scope of this document:

- http(s)://<host>:<port>/idm to access the main Identity Management User Interface containing the self-service tab and the manager tabs.
- http(s)://<host>:<port>/idm/admin to access the administrator tabs of the Identity Management Administration User Interface.

For more information on the Identity Management User Interface URLs, see SAP Identity Management Security Guide (section 5.1.1 Access to the Identity Management User Interfaces (URLs)).

What parts of the Identity Management User Interface are available depends on which UME actions are assigned to the user and what privileges are given in the Identity Center. For details, see SAP Identity Management Security Guide (sections 5.1.2 Providing General Access (UME Actions) and 5.1.3 Providing Specific Access (Identity Management Privileges).

Before running the User Interface a role needs to be created, giving any authenticated user a general access to the Identity Management User Interface. To do so, you must have a user that has a permission to create and assign roles when logged-on the UME.

Related Information

Adding User(s) to the Identity Store [page 143] General Access (Self Services Tab) [page 145] Access to Monitoring (Monitoring Tab) [page 151] Configuring the Language Settings for the Identity Management User Interface [page 152] General Access to Identity Management User Interface [page 153] Access to Manager and Administrator Tabs [page 154]

2.5.15.1 Adding User(s) to the Identity Store

Context

To be able to use the *Self Services* tab and other manager and administrator tabs (except the *Monitoring* tab) in the Identity Management User Interface, the user must be defined in both UME and in the Identity Management identity store. This is not necessary for access to the *Monitoring* tab, i.e. it is sufficient that the user exists in UME.

The link between the users is the UME User ID and the user'S MSKEYVALUE in the identity store. These must match (casing is ignored). Whether this user is created in the identity store before or after the role creation is not of importance.

i Note

Any user can be added using the below described procedure. However, typically only admin users (and/or some test users) are created this way (manually) to get started, while end-users usually are imported and synchronized using for instance SAP Provisioning Framework, or independently of the SAP Provisioning Framework.

To create an admin user (user with manager and/or administrator privileges) in the identity store, do the following:

Procedure

- 1. In Identity Management Developer Studio, select the identity store in the tree view and open the identity store properties.
- 2. In the General tab, choose Add User... button. This will open Add Identity Store User dialog box:



Enter the user name in the User Name field.

Select Add Manager Privileges and/or Add Administrator Privileges to give access to manager/ administrator tabs in the Identity Management User Interface. See section Access to Manager and Administrator Tabs for more information. For access to Monitoring tab, see section Access to Monitoring (Monitoring Tab).

3. Choose *OK* to close the dialog box and add the user to the identity store.

i Note

A check is performed if the user to be created exists in the UME or not, and a message is displayed. If the user does not exist in the UME, you will need to create it there too in order to access the Identity Management User Interface. To close the message and to create the user in the identity store, choose *OK*.

Related Information

Access to Manager and Administrator Tabs [page 154]
Access to Monitoring (Monitoring Tab) [page 151]

2.5.15.2 General Access (Self Services Tab)

Self service forms, where users can change its own user data, request the role etc, can be accessed from the *Self Services* tab.

Context

To create a role that gives access to *Self Services* tab, do the following:

Procedure

- 1. Enter: //<host>:<port> in your browser. This will open the SAP J2EE Engine Start Page.
- 2. Select *User Management*, which starts the user management administration console for the User Management Engine (UME).



3. Provide your UME credentials and choose Log On:

🚰 Identity Management - Microsoft Internet Explorer		×
Elle Edit View Favorites Iools Help	1	
🚱 Back 🔹 📀 🔸 😰 🚮 🔎 Search 🧙 Favorites 🚱 🔗 - 😓 🖀 - 🛄 🎇 🖓		
Agdress a http://	🖸 🛃 Go 🛛 Link	s
Welcome Administrator Help Log C	SAP	-
Search		
Search Criteria User Ill Data Sources Go Advanced Search Select All Deselect All Create User Copy to New User Delete Unlock Lock Generate New Password Export	Ĺ	
Type Status 🗄 Logon ID 💠 Name 🗘 Department 💠 Data Source	\$	
Enter a search parameter and choose Go.		
		-
Done	intranet	

4. Change search criteria to *Role*, and then choose *Create Role*:

lentity Management - Microso	ft Internet Explorer	
<u>E</u> dit <u>V</u> iew F <u>a</u> vorites <u>T</u> ools	s <u>H</u> elp	4
Back 🕶 🕗 👻 🛃 🔮	🏠 🔎 Search 🤺 Favorites 🤣 🔗 - 🍃 🖀 - 📙 鑬 🦓	
ess 🧃 http://	/webdynpro/dispatcher/sap.com/tc~sec~ume~wd~umeadmin/UmeAdmin	hApp 🗾 🔁 Go 🛛 Li
Velcome Administrator	figuration Consistency Check	
searcn		
Search Criteria Role 💌 All	Data Sources 👻 🥵 🥵	
Select All Deselect All Creat	e Role Delete Export	1
Type Name	Description	🗘 Data Source 😂
	Enter a search parameter and choose Go.	
I = A Row 0 of 0 ▼ = 3		
Details		
Save Cancel		1
General Information Apple	anad Groups Assigned Lisers Assigned Actions Liser Manning for System Access	
Ceneral mornation Asaig		
Unique Name: * idm.authenticate	<u>, cil</u>	
Display Name:		
Location:		
Description:		
Unique ID:		
ne		Local intranet

In the General Information tab fill in the following:

Unique Name

Give the role a describing name. The name idm.authenticated is used as example, but any name can be used.

Description

Short description of the role can be added as well. This is not a mandatory field.

5. Select the Assigned Actions tab.

identity Management - Microsoft Internet Explorer		
e <u>E</u> dit <u>V</u> iew F <u>a</u> vorites <u>T</u> ools <u>H</u> elp		
) Back 🔹 🕤 🖌 🖉 🔧 Inc. Search 👷 Favorites 🔗 😓 🔳 🕤	- 🗔	2 3
ress 🕘 http://	-wd~um	eadmin/UmeAdminApp 💎 🏹 Go
Velcome Administrator		
dentity Management Import Configuration Consistency Check		
Search		E
Search Criteria Role 🔻 All Data Sources 👻 Go		
Select All Deselect All Create Role Delete Export		
		A 04 0000
i Aba Ivauja	escriptio	Uata Source 🗢
Enter a	search	parameter and choose Go.
Row 0 of 0 ★ ★ ★		
etails		-
Save Cancel		
General Information Assigned Groups Assigned Users Assigned Actions User Ma	apping f	or System Access
Available Actions		Assigned Actions
Cet idn*		Get
Select All Deselect All		Select All Deselect All
Type Service / Application Name	4	Type \Rightarrow Service / Application \Rightarrow Name \Rightarrow
UME sap.com_tc~idm~imx~ump license_measurement		A Second of Management of Second Second
ME sap.com_tc~idm~jmx~ump idm_monitoring_administr	ration	Enter a search parameter and choose Go.
ME sap.com_tc~idm~jmx~ump idm_anonymous		
UME sap.com_tc~idm~jmx~ump idm_authenticated		
ME sap.com_tc~idm~jmx~unp idm_monitoring_support		
Add		Remove
ne		Local intranet

In the left pane (*Available Actions*): Type **idm*** in the field *Get* and choose *Go*. This will list the actions/ access rights it is possible to link to the role.

6. Select the *idm_authenticated* action and choose *Add*.

🚰 Identity Management - Microsoft Internet Explorer	
Eile Edit Yiew Favorites Tools Help	an a
🔇 Back + 🕗 - 💌 😰 🟠 🔎 Search 👷 Favorites 🔗 🔗 - 🌭 🖀 - 🦲 1	11 · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
Address A http://	admin/UmeAdminAco
Welcome Administrator	Help Log Off SAP
Identity Management Import Configuration Consistency Check	
Search	
Search Criteria Role V All Data Sources V	
Select All Deselect All Create Role Delete Export	
Type Name 🗘 Descripti	on 🗘 Data Source 🗘
Enter a searc	n parameter and choose Go.
Row Dof 0 TE	
Details	
Paul Canad	
General Information Assigned Groups Assigned Users Assigned Actions User Mapping fo	r System Access
Available Actions	Assigned Actions
Get idm* Go	Get Go
Select All Deselect All	Select All Deselect All
Type 🗘 Service / Application 🗢 Name 🗘	Type
WE sap.com_tc~idm~jmx~ump license_measurement	UME sap.com_tc~idm~jmx~ump idm_authenticated
With UME sap.com_tc~idm~jmx~ump idm_montoring_administration	
Owe sap.com_to*ion=intx-tunip ion_anonymous	
UME sep con_to*tampinx*tamp idm_datemicated	

The *idm_authenticated* action is now assigned to the role and this will be shown in the right pane (*Assigned Actions*).

7. Select the Assigned Groups tab:

dentity Management - Microsoft	Internet Explorer					
<u>E</u> dit <u>V</u> iew F <u>a</u> vorites <u>T</u> ools	Help					
Back 🕶 🕥 🛩 💌 🛃 🏠) 🔎 Search 👷 Fa	avorites 🧭 🔗 -	👙 🔳 + 🛄 🕯	ä 3		
ess 🗃 http://	/webdy	npro/dispatcher/sap.com	/tc~sec~ume~wd~umea	dmin/UmeAdminApp		- 🔁 Go 🛛 L
Velcome Administrator	uration Consistency Ch	eck			Help Loa C	
Search Criteria Role All Da	ta Sources 👻	Go .				
Type Name			ription			<u>A</u>
						Ť
		Enter a searc	h parameter and choose	Go.		
						_
▲ ▲ Row 0 of 0 ▼ ≚ ≚						
Details						
Save Cancel						
General Information Assign	ed Groups Assigned L	Jsers Assigned Actio	ns User Mapping for	System Access		
Available Groups			Assigned Groups			
Search Criteria All Data Source	8	Go	Search Criteria A	Data Sources	Go	
Select All Deselect All			Select All Desele	ct All		
Name 🌲	Description 👙	Data Source 🛛 🕀	Name	Description	⇔ Data Source	4
Administrators		UME Database				
Anonymous Users	Built-in Group Anony	Built-in Groups Adap		Enter a search parameter a	nd choose Go.	
Authenticated Users	Built-in Group Authe	Built-in Groups Adap				
A Everyone	Built-in Group Everyo	Built-in Groups Adap				
A Guests		UME Database				
🔍 🛋 🔺 Row 1 of 5 💌 🔟	<u>×</u>		E E A Row 0	of 0 💌 🕱 🖀		
Add			Remove			

In the Available Groups pane, choose Go to list all available groups.

8. Select the *Authenticated Users* group and choose *Add*.

dentity Management - Microsoft	Internet Explorer		
<u>E</u> dit <u>V</u> iew F <u>a</u> vorites <u>T</u> ools	Help		💦 👘 🖉
) Back 🔹 🕥 🖌 🚺 🛃 🏠) 🔎 Search tav	orites 🙆 🔗	🍃 🖬 + 🛄 🏭 🦓
ress 🙋 http://	/webdynp	pro/dispatcher/sap.com/to	:~sec~ume~wd~umeadmin/UmeAdminApp 🗾 💽 Go 🛛 Link
Velcome Administrator	Juration Consistency Chec		
Search Criteria Role All Da	ta Sources 💌	Go	
Type Name			rtion 🚖 Data Source 🚔
		00000	
		Enter a search j	parameter and choose Go.
I = I = Row 0 of 0 ▼ = E			
Details			
Save Cancel			
General Information Assign	ed Groups Assigned Us	ers Assigned Actions	User Mapping for System Access
Available Groups			Assigned Groups
Search Criteria All Data Source	s 🔻	Go	Search Criteria All Data Sources
Select All Deselect All			Select All Deselect All
Name 🌲	Description 👙 🛙	ata Source 🗦 🕀	Name 💠 Description 🗘 Data Source 👙
Administrators	l	JME Database	Authenticated Users Built-in Group Authe Built-in Groups Adap
Anonymous Users	Built-in Group Anony E	Built-in Groups Adap	
Authenticated Users	Built-in Group Authe E	Built-in Groups Adap	
A Everyone	Built-in Group Everyo E	Built-in Groups Adap	
Guests	1	JME Database	
Row 1 of 5 💌 🔟	Ξ.		<u>⊼</u> ▲ Row 1 of 1 ★ ★ ¥
Add			Remove
one			Local intranet

The Authenticated Users group is now given the role and this will be shown in the right pane (Assigned Groups).

Assigning the idm.authenticated role to a user group is just one of several ways to give general access to the User Interface. If only some of the users need access to the User Interface, access can be given by assigning the role directly to those users.

9. Choose Save to confirm and create the new role, which will give a general access to the User Interface to every authenticated user. The just created role will be displayed in the list of the roles available:

lentit y M	lanagei	ment - Microsoft Internet Explorer				
e Edit View Favorites Iools Help 🥂						
Back + 🕗 - 💌 🖻 🏠 🔎 Search 👷 Favorites 🤣 🔗 + چ 🖀 - 🛄 🎇 🥸						
ess 🙋 hl	ttp://	/webdy	npro/dispatcher/sa	p.com/tc~sec~ume~wd~umeadmin/Um	eAdminApp	📩 🔁 Go 🛛 I
felcome # lentity Man Search	Admini: nagemer	t Import Configuration Consistency Ch	eck			Help Loa Off
Search C	Criteria	Role 💌 All Data Sources 💌	n]	Go		1
	Tumo	blows		Description	۵.	Data Sauraa
	Type	Administrator	~	Administrator role	~	UME Detebase
	8	Everyope		Everyope role		UME Database
	5	idm authenticated				UME Database
	5	SAP JAVA NWADMIN CENTRAL		Central NetWeaver Administrator		UME Database
	5	SAP JAVA NWADMIN CENTRAL READO	NLY	Central NetWeaver Administrator, read	1-only	UME Database
Details of Modify Gene	Role id	mauthenticated mation Assigned Groups Assigned I	Jsers Assigned	Actions User Mapping for System	Access	
Search	Criter					
Jearen	Name	Air Data Sources	Description		Data Source	<u>م</u>
8	Authe	nticated Users	Built-in Group	Authenticated Users	Built-in Groups Adapte	er
	R	wv1of1 ▼ ≚				

Now that the role is created, you are able to access the Identity Management User Interface (and the *Self Services* tab).

2.5.15.3 Access to Monitoring (Monitoring Tab)

Context

It is also possible to give access to the *Monitoring* tab to those who need it. A monitoring role can be created and actions idm_monitoring_support (giving read only access to *Monitoring* tab) or idm_monitoring_administration (giving read and write access to *Monitoring* tab) can be assigned by following the same procedure as for idm_authenticated giving access to *Self Services* tab described in section *General Access* (*Self Services Tab*). Assign the created monitoring role to *Administrators* group or a specific user who needs access to *Monitoring* tab in the Identity Management User Interface. The *Monitoring* tab is available in the Identity Management Administration User Interface, with URL *http(s)://* <host>:<port>/idm/admin.

For more information about monitoring, see SAP Identity Management Solution Operation Guide.

Related Information

General Access (Self Services Tab) [page 145] SAP Identity Management Solution Operation Guide

2.5.15.4 Configuring the Language Settings for the Identity Management User Interface

Context

The language settings for the Identity Management User Interface are determined by the language settings for user in User Management Engine (UME):

Procedure

- 1. Logon to UME and search for the user you want to configure the language settings for.
- 2. Select the user from the search list and choose *Modify* in the details pane below the list. This will open the entry detail information for editing.
- 3. Choose the General Information tab.
- 4. Select a language from the list in the *Language* field and choose *Save*.

The language settings are now configured. The change will take effect after the next logon.

i Note

If you have configured customized favorite buttons in the Identity Management User Interface, the language of the text on these buttons (labels) will not be automatically updated according to the new language settings. To update the language for the favorite buttons, you need to remove the existing buttons and add the updated ones.

2.5.15.5 General Access to Identity Management User Interface

Context

To access the Identity Management User Interface do the following:

Procedure

1. Enter http(s)://<host>:<port>/idm in your browser.



Provide the credentials in the log-in window.

2. Choose Log On.

🚰 Idm - Microsoft Internet Explorer	
Eile Edit View Favorites Iools Help	
🚱 Back 🔹 🕑 🖌 📓 🐔 🔎 Search 🤺 Favorites 🤣 🍙 - 🍃 🔛 - 📴 🏭 🦓	
Address 🕘 http://	🗾 🔁 Go 🛛 Links 🎽
SAP NetWeaver	SAD
IDENTITY MANAGEMENT	
Welcome Administrator	Log Off
Self Services	
Available Self Service Tasks:	
	<u> </u>
Done	Local intranet

You are now logged on to the User Interface. The image above shows the logged-in user with access to only *Self Services* tab.

2.5.15.6 Access to Manager and Administrator Tabs

Access to other tabs than the *Monitoring* tab in the Identity Management User Interface is controlled by assigning privileges to the person entries in the identity store, in the Identity Management Developer Studio.

Context

For more details about each privilege, see SAP Identity Management Security Guide (section 5.1.3 Providing Specific Access (Identity Management Privileges)).

In section *Adding User(s)* to the Identity Store, the manager and administrator privileges (all) are given the created admin user automatically by selecting *Add Manager Privileges* and *Add Administrator Privileges* when adding the user to the identity store. But these privileges can also be assigned to users manually and on the need-to basis, for instance by creating a self service form for privilege assignment. You can do this in the following way:

Procedure

- 1. In the Identity Management Developer Studio, select a package of your identity store and choose *Check out* from the context menu.
- 2. Select the *Forms* folder of the package and choose New Assignment Request from the context menu to create a new form for the Identity Management User Interface.

The form is added and the properties are displayed. Rename the form to e.g. *Self Service: Assign Privilege* (select the form in the tree view and choose *Rename* from the context menu).

3. Select the *Parameters* tab and define the following fields:

Entry Type	Select <i>MX_PERSON</i> entry type.
Context Type	Select None.
Reference Type	Select <i>MX_PRIVILEGE</i> .
Multiselect Reference	Select this option if you want to enable multiselection of privileges to assign to a user.
Ask for Validity	Select <i>Optional</i> to give the posibility to define a validity periode for the requested privilege(s).

AP Identity Management Developer Studio - Eclipse	
🝷 🔡 🖄 😂 🗱 🌒 🔿 📥 🖓 📲 🧏 👻 🖏 🐐 🏷 🕂 🔹 🚽 🖆	tudio
SAP Identity Management	a

4. Select the Access Control tab and choose Add....

This opens the Access Control dialog box. Fill in the following:

Allow Access for	Select Logged-in user or identity store entry.	
Name	Leaving this field empty will make the task accessible to everyone. Name is entered when restricting the access to the task (e.g. enter <i>Administrator</i> name to give access to this task only to the <i>Administrator</i> user).	
On Behalf of	There are two ways of creating a self service task. You either select <i>User or identity store entity</i> or <i>Relation - Self</i> . Both ways are legitimate.	

🖨 Access Contro	bl	×
Allow Access for:	Logged-in user or identity store entry	
Name:		Check Name
Referral Attribute:		
C		
C Filter:		
On Behalf of:	User or identity store entry	
Name:		Check Name
C Filter:		
C SQL Query		
	ОК	Cancel

5. Choose *OK* to close the dialog box and add the defined access control to the form.

SAP Identity Management Developer Studio - Eclipse File Tools Edit Navigate Search Project Run Window Hel	p		
📑 • 🗏 🖷 🖮 🗱 🜒 💩 🎭 • 🖋 • 🖢 •	월 - ◆ → → → ≅	Quick Access	😭 🐉 Java 📄 SAP IdM Developer Studio
SAP Identity Management □ □ ∅ Root □ ↓ □ ↓ □ ↓ □ ↓	Self Service: Assign Privilege General Result Handling Parameters Act	cess Control Presentation Documentation	
	Access Type Val	ue: On Behalf of Value: Users User or identity store entry All users (self service)	Add Modify Remove

6. Save the changes applied to the form. Choose File > Save or press Ctrl + s.

Now the self service form is created and visible in the *Self Services* tab of the Identity Management User Interface:

🖾 SAP NetWeaver Identity Mar 🗙 💶	
← → C 🗋 localhost: 50000/webdynpro/dispatcher/sap.com/tc~idm~wd~workflow/Idm#	\$ \$ \$
Apps 🗋 UME VersionLibrary 💯 SAP AS JAVA 📅 NWA 📅 UME 🔐 IDM WebUI	
SAP NetWeaver IDENTITY MANAGEMENT	SAP
Welcome Administrator	Log off
Self Services	
Available tasks	
Self Service: Assign Privilege	
1	

- 7. To assign privileges and give access to other tabs than the *Self Services* tab, do the following:
 - a. Select and open the self service form in the Identity Management User Interface.
 - b. Choose Go on the left side of the pane (under Available) to list available privileges:

	27 9	SAP NetWeaver Identity Mar 🗙	Self Service: Assign Privilege 🗙 📃						
-		→ C 🗋 localhost: 5000)/webdynpro/dispatcher/sap.co	om/tc~idm~w	id~v	/ork	flow/EditTask?TaskId=2#		☆ =
	Ap	ps 📄 UME VersionLibrary 🖅 SAF	AS JAVA 🔤 NWA 🔤 UME 🔤 IDM V	WebUI					
	s	elf Service: Assig	n Privilege						Help
Un Di:	iqu spla	e ID: Administrator y Name: Administrator							
I)		1 2 Select privilege Enter details	3						
	4 F	Previous Next 🕨							
	Sele	ect privilege							
	Ava	ilable				s	elected		
	Fin	# #	Go Add	Advance	d	(Delete		
Ī	ъ	Unique ID	Display Name	Entry Owner		P	Unique ID	Display Name	
11		MX_PRIV:TRANSPORT:EXPORT	MX_PRIV:TRANSPORT:EXPORT				MX_PRIV:TRANSPORT:EXPORT	MX_PRIV:TRANSPORT:EXPORT	
li		MX_PRIV:TRANSPORT:IMPORT	MX_PRIV:TRANSPORT:IMPORT				MX_PRIV:TRANSPORT:IMPORT	MX_PRIV:TRANSPORT:IMPORT	
1		MX_PRIV:WD:MSGTEMPLATE:R	MX_PRIV:VVD:MSGTEMPLATE:R				MX PRIV:WD:MSGTEMPLATE:R	MX_PRIV:VVD:MSGTEMPLATE:R	
li		MX_PRIV:VVD:MSGTEMPLATE:RVV	MX_PRIV:VVD:MSGTEMPLATE:RVV				MX_PRIV:WD:MSGTEMPLATE:RW	MX_PRIV:VVD:MSGTEMPLATE:RVV	
1		MX_PRIV:WD:TAB_HISTORY	MX_PRIV:WD:TAB_HISTORY				MX PRIV:WD:TAB HISTORY	MX_PRIV:WD:TAB_HISTORY	
li		MX_PRIV:WD:TAB_MANAGE	MX_PRIV:WD:TAB_MANAGE				MX PRIV:WD:TAB MANAGE	MX_PRIV:WD:TAB_MANAGE	
1		MX_PRIV:WD:TAB_REPORT	MX_PRIV:VVD:TAB_REPORT				MX PRIV:WD:TAB REPORT	MX_PRIV:WD:TAB_REPORT	
I		MX_PRIV:WD:TAB_THRESHOLD	MX_PRIV:WD:TAB_THRESHOLD				MX PRIV:WD:TAB THRESHOLD	MX_PRIV:WD:TAB_THRESHOLD	
1		MX_PRIV:WD:TAB_TODO	MX_PRIV:VVD:TAB_TODO				MX PRIV:WD:TAB TODO	MX_PRIV:WD:TAB_TODO	
1		MX_PRIV:WD:TAB_TRACE	MX_PRIV:VVD:TAB_TRACE		-		MX PRIV:WD:TAB_TRACE	MX_PRIV:WD:TAB_TRACE	

i Note

When searching for any specific entry (persons, roles, privileges and so on) in the Identity Management User Interface, make sure you always provide the language-specific characters of that entry. For example: To search for an entry containing an accented "e" ("é"), you should type "é". If you provide only "e", the entry will not be displayed in the search result.

- c. Select the desired privileges. In order to select multiple rows simultaneously, enable the option *Multiselect Reference* in step 3. Choose *Add*.
- d. Choose *Next*, and optionally define validity periode and reason for the privileges that are to be assigned:

Image: Display Name: Administrator	Help
 C localhost: 50000/webdynpro/dispatcher/sap.com/tc~idm~wd~workflow/EditTask?TaskId=2# Apps UME VersionLibrary 27 SAP AS JAVA 27 NWA 27 UME 27 IDM WebUI Self Service: Assign Privilege Unique ID: Administrator Display Name: Administrator Select privilege Enter details Review and finish Previous Next > The details you enter here will be applied to all requested assignments Validit period: Validit From/To: 1 () () (Permove Add) 	Help
Apps UME VersionLibrary 20° SAP AS JAVA 20° NWA 20° UME 20° IDM WebUI Self Service: Assign Privilege Unique ID: Administrator Display Name: Administrator I 2 3 Select privilege Enter details Review and finish Previous Next The details you enter here will be applied to all requested assignments Valid From/To: [] / [] Remove Add	Help
Self Service: Assign Privilege Jnique ID: Administrator Display Name: Administrator 1 2 3 Select privilege Enter details Review and finish Previous Next The details you enter here will be applied to all requested assignments Validity period: Valid From/To: 1 Image: Previous Add	Help
Jnique ID: Administrator Display Name: Administrator 1 2 3 Image: Select privilege Enter details Review and finish Image: Previous Next Image:	
Image: Select privilege Enter details Review and finish Image: Select privilege Enter details Review and finish Image: Select privilege Image: Select privilege Image: Select privilege Image: Select privilege Image: Select privilege Image: Select privilege Image: Select privilege Image: Select privilege Image: Select privilege Image: Select privilege Image: Select privilege Image: Select privilege Image: Select privilege Image: Select privilege Image: Select privilege Image: Select privilege Image: Select privilege Image: Select privilege Image: Select privilege Image: Select privilege Image: Select privilege Image: Select privilege Image: Select privilege Image: Select privilege Image: Select privilege Image: Select privilege Image: Select privilege Image: Select privilege Image: Select privilege Image: Select privilege Image: Select privilege Image: Select privilege Image: Select privilege Image: Select privilege Image: Select privilege Image: Select privilege Image: Select privilege Image: Select privilege Image: Select privilege Image: Select privilege Image: Select privilege Image: Select privilege Image: Select privilege Image: S	
Select privilege Enter details Review and trinsh Previous Next The details you enter here will be applied to all requested assignments Validity period: Valid From/To:	
Image: Previous Next > The details you enter here will be applied to all requested assignments Validity period: Valid From/To: Image: Part > Valid From/To: Part >	
The details you enter here will be applied to all requested assignments Validity period: Valid From/To: Remove Add	
Validity period: Valid From/To: D / D Remove Add	
Valid From/To:	
Reason:	

e. Choose *Next* and review the selections:

🖙 SAP NetWeaver Identity Mar 🗙 🔤 Self Service: Assign Privilege 🗙 💽	
← → C [] localhost: 50000/webdynpro/dispatcher/sap.com/tc~idm~wd~workflow/EditTask?Ta	isk☆ =
Apps 🗋 UME VersionLibrary 💇 SAP AS JAVA 📅 NWA 📅 UME 📅 IDM WebUI	
Self Service: Assign Privilege	Help
Unique ID: Administrator Display Name: Administrator	
2 3 Select privilege Enter details Review and finish	
Previous Finish	
Review the following assignments before they are submitted.	
Privilege: MX_PRIV:APPROVALISTORY MX_PRIV:APPROVALS:MODIFY MX_PRIV:APPROVALS:READONLY MX_PRIV:CONFIG_AUDIT MX_PRIV:CONFIG_R MX_PRIV:CONFIG_R MX_PRIV:CONFIG_R MX_PRIV:MANAGED_APPROVALS:MODIFY MX_PRIV:MANAGED_APPROVALS:MODIFY MX_PRIV:MANAGED_APPROVALS:READONLY MX_PRIV:MANAGED_APPROVALS:READONLY MX_PRIV:TRANSPORT:EXPORT MX_PRIV:TRANSPORT:EXPORT MX_PRIV:TRANSPORT:EXPORT MX_PRIV:WD:MSGTEMPLATE:RW MX_PRIV:WD:MSGTEMPLATE:RW MX_PRIV:WD:TAB_INSTORY MX_PRIV:WD:TAB_INSTORY MX_PRIV:WD:TAB_INSTORY MX_PRIV:WD:TAB_TRESHOLD MX_PRIV:WD:TAB_TRESHOLD MX_PRIV:WD:TAB_TRACE Validity period: unlimited Paesone	

Confirm and execute the form by choosing *Finish*.

8. Close the self service form.

Results

The privileges are now added and the tabs should be visible in the Identity Management User Interface.

i Note

You will need to choose the *Refresh* button before the tabs are visible.





And for the http(s)://<host>:<port>/idm/admin:

SAP NetWeaver IDENTITY MANAGEMENT	SAP
Welcome Administrator	Log off
Monitoring Trace Configuration History System Parameters Statement Execution Message Templates Approval Management	
Show: Dispatcher status 💌 Go	3 1 1

Related Information

SAP Identity Management Security Guide Adding User(s) to the Identity Store [page 143]

2.5.16 Defining Customer Specific Themes for Web Dynpro Applications

As a Web Dynpro application, SAP Identity Management User Interface may be adapted. You can define a specific theme (the look and feel) of your User Interface application.

Customer-specific themes can be defined for Web Dynpro applications. Users are advised to set their themes according to where their applications run. The applications can run as standalone applications or inside the SAP Enterprise Portal. The process of defining the themes depends on whether your application runs standalone or inside the portal, and on the SAP NetWeaver version you are using.

For more information, see the Related Information.

Related Information

SAP NetWeaver 7.3 Configuring the Web Dynpro Runtime Environment Setting the Theme SAP NetWeaver 7.3 EHP1 Configuring the Web Dynpro Runtime Environment Setting the Theme SAP NetWeaver 7.4 Configuring the Web Dynpro Runtime Environment Setting the Theme SAP NetWeaver 7.5 Configuring the Web Dynpro Runtime Environment Setting the Theme

2.5.17 Keyboard Access for User Interface Elements in Web Dynpro

As a Web Dynpro application, SAP Identity Management User Interface may be adapted. You can create and activate keyboard access for User Interface elements.

It is possible to activate keyboard access for User Interface elements in applications running in the HTML client and based on Web Dynpro for ABAP or Java. This information is relevant to you if you use the keyboard to navigate around your application's UI and use its functions.

To use the keyboard commands, you must enable the accessibility mode. Many of the commands also work when accessibility mode is disabled, but others, such as group navigation or navigation of inactive UI elements, only work when it is enabled.

For more information about how to enable keyboard access, see the Related Information (for supported SAP NetWeaver versions).

Related Information

Keyboard Access for Web Dynpro for ABAP / for Java for SAP NetWeaver 7.3 Keyboard Access for Web Dynpro for ABAP / for Java for EHP 1 for SAP NetWeaver 7.3 Keyboard Access for UI Elements in Web Dynpro (New Rendering) for SAP NetWeaver 7.4 Keyboard Access for UI Elements in Web Dynpro (New Rendering) for SAP NetWeaver 7.5

2.5.18 Integrating Identity Management User Interface in the SAP Enterprise Portal (optional)

You can integrate the Identity Management User Interface in the SAP Enterprise Portal. Before it can be integrated in the SAP Enterprise Portal, the Identity Management User Interface should be installed and configured locally on the SAP Enterprise Portal, as described in this document.

You need to perform the following configuration in the SAP Enterprise Portal:

- Import the predefined content for the SAP Enterprise Portal.
- Check the Portal integration of the Identity Management User Interface.

2.5.18.1 Importing Predefined Contents for the SAP NetWeaver

Context

To import the contents to the Portal, do the following:

Procedure

- 1. Log on to the Portal as system administrator.
- 2. Select the System Administration tab and its sub-tab Transport, and then navigate to Transport Packages/ Import.
- 3. Import the .EPA archive (role, worksets, iViews). The .EPA archive is provided in the *Misc* subdirectory in the installation kit for the Designtime Components.

For more details on importing and deploying of EPA archives, see the Related Information.

Related Information

Importing and Deploying EPA Archives for SAP NetWeaver 7.3 Importing and Deploying EPA Archives for EHP 1 for SAP NetWeaver 7.3 Importing and Deploying EPA Archives for SAP NetWeaver 7.4 Importing and Deploying EPA Archives for SAP NetWeaver 7.5

2.5.18.2 Verifying the Portal integration of the Identity Management User Interface

Context

To verify the Portal integration, do the following:

Procedure

- 1. Log on to the SAP Enterprise Portal with your admin user (that also exists in the identity store you would like to access through the Portal).
- 2. Select the *Identity Management* tab in the Portal and verify that you have the access to the User Interface and its contents.

${f i}$ Note

In order for this to work, you must have configured the Identity Management User Interface correctly, giving at least a general access to the User Interface to users, as described in the section *Initial configuration*.

If everything is done correctly, the contents of the Identity Management User Interface will be presented under the *Identity Management* tab in the SAP Enterprise Portal. The content will be something similar to the one shown below:

🚰 Identity Management - SAP NetWeaver Portal - Microsoft Internet Explorer	_0×
Eile Edit View Favorites Tools Help	
🚱 Back 🔹 🕗 👻 📓 🏠 🔎 Search 🤺 Favorites 🤣 😥 - 😓 😥 👻 🖓	
Address 🕘 http://	💌 🔁 Go 🛛 Links
Welcome Administrator,	
Content Administration User Administration System Administration Identity Management	
Identity Management	
	History Back Forward 🗐
Self services To do Manage View Reports History	
Available self service tasks:	
Change User Data	
My profile	
Request New Business Role	
Request role	
ROLEPENDING is set up with an approval task.	
Done III	Second Intranet

Related Information

Initial Configuration of Identity Management User Interface [page 143]

2.5.19 Initial Configuration of Identity Management User Interface for HTML5

Configuring the Identity Management User Interface for HTML5 involves the following steps:

- Authorization and authentication for the REST interface:
 - Assigning the required role and actions in User Management Engine (UME)
 - Enabling single sign-on with logon tickets
- Adding the predefined forms in the Identity Management Developer Studio
- Configuring the solution

Related Information

Authorization and Authentication for the Identity Management User Interface for HTML5 [page 164] Adding the Predefined Forms and Configuring the Solution [page 166] Configuring the Solution [page 168]

2.5.19.1 Authorization and Authentication for the Identity Management User Interface for HTML5

To access the REST API v2, the user requires the UME action idm_authenticated_restapi. To access Identity Management User Interface for HTML5, the user needs the UME action idm_authenticated_ui5 in addition to the actions required for the REST API v2. The role idm.user contains all three of these UME actions, and you should assign it to the user so that he or she has the appropriate authorization and authentication for the Identity Management User Interface for HTML5. These actions and the role are provided as part of the software component containing the Identity Management User Interface and the REST service. All other necessary authorizations for a service call are defined by the access control of the related Identity Management form.

The default configuration of the SAP NetWeaver Identity Management 7.2 REST API forces a logon on all requests using the provided basic authentication credentials, which consumes time and leads to a high number of security sessions in the SAP NetWeaver AS for Java. Using single sign-on (SSO) with logon tickets for the REST API improves the performance.

2.5.19.1.1 Assigning the Role idm.user

Context

Make sure that all users that will use the Identity Management User Interface for HTML5 are assigned the role idm.user (this assigns the neccessary UME actions idm_authenticated_restapi and idm_authenticated_ui5 to the user).

To assign the role to the users, proceed as follows:

Procedure

- 1. In the UME (http(s)://<server>:<port>/useradmin), search for the role idm.user.
- 2. Assign the role to all users that you want to be able to access the Identity Management User Interface for HTML5.

Related Information

Administration of Users and Roles for SAP NetWeaver 7.3 Administration of Users and Roles for EHP1 for SAP NetWeaver 7.3 Administration of Users and Roles for SAP NetWeaver 7.4 Administration of Users and Roles for SAP NetWeaver 7.5

2.5.19.1.2 Enabling Single Sign-On with Logon Tickets

To improve performance, make sure that single sign-on with logon tickets is enabled for the REST service, as described in SAP Identity Management REST Interface Version 2 (see topic Configuring Single Sign-On With Logon Tickets in the REST Interface for AS Java 7.1 and higher).

Related Information

SAP Identity Management REST Interface Version 2

2.5.19.2 Adding the Predefined Forms and Configuring the Solution

You can manage information displayed in the Identity Management User Interface for HTML5 and the access restrictions for this information through forms in the Identity Management Developer Studio. You need to import the predefined forms into the Identity Management Developer Studio. You should not change the Identity Management User Interface for HTML5, and therefore should not delete, replace, or modify the imported, predefined forms in any way.

Some configuration is required for the solution.

2.5.19.2.1 Importing the Forms

Context

The package com.sap.idm.forms.html5 contains a set of predefined forms for Identity Management User Interface for HTML5. To import the package into the Identity Management Developer Studio, proceed as follows:

Procedure

- 1. In the Identity Management Developer Studio, select the *Packages* node of your identity store in the tree view.
- 2. Choose Import... from the context menu.
- 3. Navigate to the package directory and select the form package for Identity Management User Interface for HTML5.
- 4. Choose *Open* and a dialog box appears. Optionally, enter a reason for import and make sure that *Import* is selected.
- 5. Choose *OK* to close the dialog box and to import the package.

Results

The imported package with all the forms for Identity Management User Interface for HTML5 is added to the identity store:



The imported package contains the following forms:

Name of the Form	Description
Business Area (Allowed Values)	Retrieves the list of defined business areas, which can be used to search for roles that are relevant for a specific business area. Associated with the <i>My Requests</i> page in the Identity Management User Interface for HTML5.
Display Company Address	Displays detailed information for company address (information like company name, location, phone number, and so on). Associated with the <i>Workplace Data</i> section of the <i>My Data</i> page in the Identity Management User Interface for HTML5.
Display Identity	Displays the details of an identity entry. For future use.
Display Role	Displays detailed information of a role (for example, role description). Associated with the pages <i>My Requests</i> and <i>My Roles</i> in the Identity Management User Interface for HTML5.
My Data	Retrieves and updates the user data (for example, user picture, name (first, last and middle name(s)), title, language, and so on). Associated with the <i>My Data</i> page (overview data) and the <i>Change My Data</i> page (accessed from the <i>My Data</i> page by choosing the <i>Change My Data</i> button) in the Identity Management User Interface for HTML5.
My Roles	Retrieves and updates details about the assigned roles and requested new roles. Associated with the <i>My Roles</i> page and the <i>My Requests</i> page in the Identity Management User Interface for HTML5.
	Assignments in status Pending, Rejected and Assigned OK will be displayed.

Name of the Form	Description
My Security Questions	Retrieves the currently available security questions and updates the answers to
	these questions. Associated with the My Security Questions section of the My
	Data page and the Change My Security Question page (accessed from the My
	Data page, under the My Security Questions section) in the Identity Management
	User Interface for HTML5.

Do not delete, replace, or modify the imported, predefined forms in any way.

i Note

The imported forms cannot be deleted or replaced by any similar forms in the configuration, because the GUIDs are referred to directly in the code of the user interface.

i Note

Do not modify the imported forms to include new attributes.

i Note

Do not modify access control for the predefined forms.

2.5.19.2.2 Configuring the Solution

To use the predefined forms for Identity Management User Interface for HTML5, you need to configure or maintain the following:

- In the List column of the Attributes tab of the MX_ROLE entry type, select the DESCRIPTION attribute.
- Maintain the values of the attributes MX_SALUTATION, MX_TITLE_SUPPLEMENT, and MXREF_MX_COMPANY_ADDRESS for the *My Data* form.
- Maintain the values for the attribute MX_BUSINESS_AREA for the entry type MX_ROLE.
- View the access control defined for the forms.
- Activate HTTPS (the use of SSL) on your AS Java.

2.5.19.2.2.1 Defining the DESCRIPTION Attribute for the MX_ROLE Entry Type

Context

For the entry type MX_ROLE, you need to select the attribute DESCRIPTION in the *List* column of the entry type's *Attributes* tab. This is important for the description information displayed on the *My Requests* page in the Identity Management User Interface for HTML5.

Procedure

- 1. In the tree view of Identity Management Developer Studio, display the entry types in the identity store (double click the *Entry Types* node of your identity store schema).
- 2. View the properties of the *MX_ROLE* entry type and select the *Attributes* tab.
- 3. Find the DESCRIPTION attribute and select the *List* option.
- 4. Choose File Save or press Ctrl + s to save the changes.

2.5.19.2.2.2 Maintaining the Attributes for the My Data Form

The *My Data* form is responsible for retrieving and updating the user data like user picture, name (first, last, and middle name(s)), title, or language. No actual configuration of the form is necessary, but you need to maintain some attribute values:

- MX_SALUTATION: Language-specific, ABAP mapping attribute displaying the title of the user (Mr, Mrs, and so on). Retrieve the input help for the attribute needs to be from the system (read customizing table (TSAD3, TSAD3T)) or maintain it manually. The value defined for this attribute for the given identity entry also needs to be retrieved from the system, and any changes in the value should be updated in the system.
- MX_TITLE_SUPPLEMENT: Language-specific, ABAP mapping attribute displaying a title supplement, such as a noble title. Retrieve the input help for the attribute from the system (read customizing table (TSAD5)) or maintain it manually. The value defined for this attribute for the given identity entry also needs to be retrieved from the system, and any changes in the value should be updated in the system.
- MXREF_MX_COMPANY_ADDRESS: This entry reference attribute should be retrieved from the system (or maintained manually). The workplace location data displayed in the user interface is derived from this value.

The allowed values for attributes MX_SALUTATION and MX_TITLE_SUPPLEMENT, and the valid entries for the entry reference MXREF_MX_COMPANY_ADDRESS can be obtained using the standard initial load job templates of the SAP Provisioning Framework. Check if the necessary data is already available in your identity store and that it is correct. If not, obtain the data using the initial load jobs. You can also use the SAP Provisioning Framework

to read the values/references defined for the identity entries into the identity store and to provision this data to target systems. For more details about the SAP Provisioning Framework and the initial load jobs, see

Related Information

SAP Identity Management Configuration Guide

2.5.19.2.2.2.1 Virus Scan Interface

The option to upload user pictures to the Identity Management User Interface for HTML5 could be abused, by utilizing it for virus distribution. Identity Management REST Interface 2.0 supports the virus scan interface of the AS Java for write access of the binary attributes in the identity store. For details about how to set up the virus scan interface and how to configure it for different services, such as the Identity Management REST Interface, see the documentation regarding the virus scan interface for your AS Java on SAP Help Portal.

To learn more about the details that are specific to using the virus scan interface together with the Identity Management REST Interface, see SAP Identity Management REST Interface Version 2.

Related Information

Virus Scan Interface for SAP NetWeaver 7.3 Virus Scan Interface for SAP NetWeaver 7.3 EHP1 Virus Scan Interface for SAP NetWeaver 7.4 Virus Scan Interface for SAP NetWeaver 7.5 SAP Identity Management REST Interface Version 2

2.5.19.2.2.3 Maintaining the Attribute MX_BUSINESS_AREA for Entry Type MX_ROLE

We recommend that you categorize the roles into business areas, which means maintaining the MX_BUSINESS_AREA attribute of the MX_ROLE entry type.

This information is used/displayed by the *My Roles* form, which retrieves and updates the details about the assigned roles and requested new roles for a user. The *My Requests* page of the Identity Management User Interface for HTML5 allows the filtering of roles by business area.

2.5.19.2.2.4 Access Control for the Forms

Do not modify access control for the predefined forms.

2.5.19.2.2.5 Configuring the AS Java for SSL Use

Context

To be able to update the answers of the security questions on the *Change My Security Questions* page in the Identity Management User Interface for HTML5, HTTPS must be activated for your AS Java where the Identity Management User Interface for HTML5 is installed. There are two ways you can configure the use of SSL - either manually by configuring the ICM and the AS Java keystore separately, or by using the SSL configuration tool in SAP NetWeaver Administrator.

Proceed as follows:

Procedure

- 1. Follow the steps described in Configuring Transport Layer Security on SAP NetWeaver AS for Java.
- 2. Your AS Java is ready to use SSL. You may want to test the SSL connection to the AS Java after performing the configuration.

Related Information

SAP NetWeaver 7.3 Configuring Transport Layer Security on SAP NetWeaver AS for Java SAP NetWeaver 7.3 EHP1 Configuring Transport Layer Security on SAP NetWeaver AS for Java SAP NetWeaver 7.4 Configuring Transport Layer Security on SAP NetWeaver AS for Java SAP NetWeaver 7.5 Configuring Transport Layer Security on SAP NetWeaver AS for Java

2.5.19.3 Accessing the Identity Management User Interface for HTML5

Context

To access the Identity Management User Interface for HTML5, proceed as follows:

Procedure

- 1. Enter http(s)://<host>:<port>/idmui5 in your browser.
- 2. Provide the credentials in the logon window and choose Log On.
- 3. You are now logged on to the Identity Management User Interface for HTML5. The My Data page appears.

2.5.19.4 Restrictions and Considerations

Modifications of the Identity Management User Interface for HTML5

Any modifications of the Identity Management User Interface for HTML5 are not supported.

- The imported forms should not be deleted or replaced by any similar forms in the configuration, because the GUIDs are referred directly in the code of the user interface.
- The imported, predefined forms should not be modified in any way (including attributes and the access control defined on the forms).
- JavaScript files in the deployment package should not be replaced, removed or modified in any way.

Language Settings

You change the language for the Identity Management User Interface for HTML5 by modifying the language setting for the respective browser. For more information on how to update the browser language, see the browser documentation. For more language information for the SAPUI5 applications, see *Identifying the Language Code / Locale* for your AS Java version.

i Note

A limitation of the Microsoft Internet Explorer 9 is that it takes the language configured for the operating system. In such a case, it is recommended that you update to Microsoft Internet Explorer 10, which browser does not have such a limitation.

Pictures Uploads

The upload of pictures in any format is not supported by the Microsoft Internet Explorer 9. In such a case, you will receive the following error message: Browser does not support getting the file for uploading. Then, you need to upgrade to Microsoft Internet Explorer 10.

Related Information

Identifying the Language Code / Locale Identifying the Language Code / Locale for SAP NetWeaver 7.4

2.5.20 Starting the Virtual Directory Server

On Unix

Prerequisites

A working X-Windows setup is required.

Set the JAVA_HOME environment variable for the <sapsid>adm user to point to /usr/sap/ <SAPSID>/IDM<No>/exe/sapjvm_<No>. Use the <sapsid>adm user to start the Virtual Directory Server.sh script. This user needs read, write and execute permissions for the /usr/sap/<SAPSID>/ VDS<Instance_Number>/VDS folder and all its subfolders and files.

Context

To start the Virtual Directory Server on Unix, proceed as follows:

Procedure

- Navigate to the installation directory of the Virtual Directory Server. By default: /usr/sap/<SAPSID>/ VDS<Instance_Number>/VDS.
- 2. Execute Virtual Directory Server.sh.

2.5.21 Initial Configuration of Identity Management Virtual Directory Server

After the Virtual Directory Server is installed, some initial configuration is necessary.

Depending on how you plan to use the Virtual Directory Server, you may also need to add some external components.

Related Information

Configuring the Virtual Directory Server Environment [page 175] Access to Keys.ini File by Virtual Directory Server Components [page 181]

2.5.21.1 Configuring the Virtual Directory Server Environment

The Virtual Directory Server needs some initial information in order to operate properly.

Context

To configure the Virtual Directory Server environment, proceed as follows:

Procedure

1. In the Configure settings dialog box, select the General tab.

💋 Options		888 d
General External tools	s Classpath	
Paths		
Java VM:	/usr/java/sapjvm_8/jre/bin/java	
Application directory:	/usr/sap/IJM/VDS03/VDS	
Configuration directory:	/usr/sap/IJM/VDS03/VDS/configurations	
Encryption key file:	/sapmnt/IJM/global/security/data/Key/Keys.ini	
Temp directory:	/tmp	
Java compiler		
Enable compilation	Compile Java classes at server start-up	
Target VM: 1.	1.4 🔆	
Use embedded comp	piler	
O Use specified compile	ler:	
🗌 Autosave configuratio	on on all changes 🛛 🗌 Maximize windows	
🔲 Open last used file on	ı startup LDAP browser location: Left 📩	pane
	Restore confirmation message	ges
	Restore defaults	
	OK Cancel	

2. Configure the following properties:

Property	Description
Paths	Verify that the paths for to the different directories are correct.
Encryption key file	Provide the path to the Keys.ini file. For ex- ample: /sapmnt/ <sapsid>/global/security/ data/Key/Keys.ini. For more information about the Keys.ini file, see SAP Identity Management Security Guide</sapsid>
Java compiler	Configure the parameters for the Java compiler if you want to compile Java classes. Select <i>Use embedded compiler</i> if you run JRE and have downloaded tools.jar as described in <i>Installing a Java compiler</i> .
	If you have installed JDK, select Use specified compiler and select javac.exe from your JDK installation.
	Autosave configuration on all changes should normally be selected.

3. Select the *External tools* tab.

🥖 Configure setti	ings
General Exter	rnal tools Classpath
Help system and	id Javadoc
Web browser:	
Help files:	https://help.sap.com/viewer/p/SAP_IDENTITY_MANAGEMENT
Source code for	rmatting
Use built-in f	formatter
C External:	
	ОК

- Select the browser you want to use for viewing the help file and Javadoc. The *Help files* field contains the default start page for the help file.
- Select which tool you want to use for the formatting of the Java source code. You can either use the built-in formatter or an external formatter (for instance Jalopy).

4. Select the *Classpath* tab.

🖌 Configure settings		Ø
General External tools Classpath		
Classpath:	Add file Ad	ld folder
Classpath		
C:\usr\sap\idm\JDBC Drivers\MSSQL JDBC40\sqljdbc4.jar		
Additional java options:		
ОК		

If necessary, add any files or folders to the classpath that are specific to the Virtual Directory Server, for instance if they are needed by the specified JDBC drivers.

5. Choose OK.

Related Information

Installing a Java Compiler [page 178]

2.5.21.1.1 Installing a Java Compiler

A Java compiler is required to develop and compile Java classes.

You can choose between the following options:

- Download and install the JDK (version 1.4, 1.5, 1.6 or 1.8). Select *Use specified compiler* and then select the javac.exe of the JDK installation in the *Options* dialog box.
- If you have installed JRE and do not want to install the complete JDK, you can download tools.jar corresponding to your version of JRE. Place it in the <inst dir>\lib\jdkl.x directory and select Use embedded compiler in the Options dialog box.

2.5.21.2 Paging Mechanism

You can use the paging mechanism when accessing an LDAP directory.

Context

To use the paging mechanism when accessing an LDAP directory, do the following:

Procedure

- 1. Download and install the LDAP Booster Pack that is part of the Java Naming and Directory Interface (JNDI).
- 2. Locate the file ldapbp.jar in the download.
- 3. Add the file to classpath, as described in Configuring the Virtual Directory Server environment.

Related Information

Configuring the Virtual Directory Server Environment [page 175]

2.5.21.3 Alternative LDAP connector

You can use the alternative (low-memory-consumption) LDAP connector.

Context

To use the alternative LDAP connector, do the following:

Procedure

- 1. Download the file ldapjdk.jar from Netscape Directory SDK for Java.
- 2. Follow the instructions and copy the file to <inst dir>\lib.

Related Information

Netscape Directory SDK for Java 📌

2.5.21.4 SAML Outbound Connector

You can use the SAML outbound connector.

Context

To use the SAML outbound connector, do the following:

Procedure

- 1. Download the file opensaml.jar.
- 2. Copy the file to <inst dir>\lib.
Related Information

OpenSAML 📌

2.5.21.5 Event Triggers and SendMail Event

You can use event triggers and SendMail event actions.

Context

To use event triggers and SendMail event actions, do the following:

Procedure

- 1. Download the mail.jar from the JavaMail API.
- 2. Copy the file to <inst dir>\lib.

2.5.21.6 External LDAP Client

Context

The Virtual Directory Server contains an internal LDAP client, but you may need an external LDAP client for viewing the contents of the Virtual Directory Server.

2.5.21.7 Access to Keys.ini File by Virtual Directory Server Components

This section describes how the various Virtual Directory Server components handle the Keys.ini file.

For more information about managing Keys.ini file, see SAP Identity Management Security Guide.

Virtual Directory Management Console

The Virtual Directory Management Console (configuration user interface) checks for Keys.ini in the following locations:

- The folder specified with the parameter KEYS_INI_FILE in the file .vdssettings The .vdssettings file is created in the /usr/sap/<SAPSID>/VDS<Instance_Number>/VDS folder after you have configured the Virtual Directory Server environment. See Configuring the Virtual Directory Server Environment [page 175]
- The folder specified with the environment variable VDS_HOME

If no Keys.ini file is found, the Virtual Directory Management Console will give a warning when it is started (even if encryption is not or will not be used). All encryption will be done using the built-in scrambling and all hashing will be done with MD5.

Decryption will fail, except for scrambled values.

Deployed Mode

In a deployed mode, the Virtual Directory Server configuration is exported as a deployable archive (EAR file). This archive is deployed on SAP NetWeaver AS Java. It runs on SAP NetWeaver AS Java as an application. For more information, see SAP NetWeaver Identity Management Identity Services Configuration Guide

Deploying the configuration on SAP NetWeaver Deploying the configuration Other SAP NetWeaver versions .

A configuration that is deployed on SAP NetWeaver AS for Java retrieves the location of Keys.ini from the configuration in SAP NetWeaver AS for Java. Every deployed configuration has a corresponding sap.application.global.properties associated with it. Use SAP NetWeaver Administrator and locate the property com.sap.idm.vds.keyfile and enter the path to the Keys.ini file.

If no Keys.ini file is found, encryption will be done with scrambling and hashing with MD5. Decryption will fail, except for scrambled values.

Standalone Mode

In a standalone mode, the Virtual Directory Server is run as a standalone server directly on the host where it is installed.

A configuration that is run in standalone mode retrieves the location of Keys.ini file in the following locations:

- A file specified with the command line parameter KEYS_INI_FILE (Java option)
- The folder specified with the environment variable DSE_HOME
- The folder specified with the environment variable VDS_HOME

If no Keys.ini is found, encryption will be done with scrambling and hashing with MD5. Decryption will fail, except for scrambled values.

Related Information

SAP Identity Management Security Guide

2.6 Starting and Stopping SAP Identity Management

Starting and Stopping the SAP Identity Management User Interface

The Identity Management User Interface is deployed on SAP NetWeaver AS for Java, and the service is controlled from there (using the SAP NetWeaver Administrator).

Starting and Stopping the Processing in the SAP Identity Management Developer Studio

The processing of jobs, tasks and processes in the Identity Management Developer Studio is controlled by the dispatchers. You can start and stop any or all of these dispatcher services by using the Identity Management Dispatcher Utility. In addition, the dispatcher services can be suspended (set to sleep-mode), and resumed when needed. For details see *Creating and Managing the Dispatcher(s)*.

From the Identity Management Developer Studio, you are only able to suspend, resume and stop the dispatcher services. See *Suspending and Resuming a Dispatcher* and *Stopping a Dispatcher* for details.

Starting and Stopping the SAP Identity Management Virtual Directory Server

An Identity Management Virtual Directory Server configuration can either be deployed as a web service on SAP NetWeaver AS for Java or be run locally as an LDAP server. When deployed locally, the server is started and stopped from the Virtual Directory Server user interface.

When deployed on SAP NetWeaver AS for Java the service is controlled by SAP NetWeaver AS for Java (using the SAP NetWeaver Administrator).

Related Information

Creating and Managing the Dispatcher(s) on Windows

Creating and Managing the Dispatcher(s) on UNIX Suspending and Resuming a Dispatcher Stopping a Dispatcher

3 Updating SAP Identity Management

This section describes how to update SAP Identity Management 8.0 to implement support packages or patches.

If your SAP Identity Management system is installed with the Software Provisioning Manager 1.0 tool, use this installation tool to implement patches or update your system to a higher SP level.

For manual SAP Identity Management installations, the update procedure is performed by manually updating all the necessary components to a higher SP level.

The following sections describe how to update SAP Identity Management:

- By using Software Provisioning Manager 1.0 [page 185]
- By manually updating SAP Identity Management components to a higher SP level [page 188]

3.1 Updating SAP Identity Management with Software Provisioning Manager 1.0

This section describes how to patch and update SAP Identity Management 8.0 with Software Provisioning Manager 1.0.

Prerequisites

- You have installed SAP Identity Management using Software Provisioning Manager 1.0
- You have downloaded the dedicated installation archives (SAR files) containing the software to be installed. See Preparing the Installation Media [page 55]

→ Recommendation

We recommend that you always download the latest patch level of SAP Identity Management components from the SAP Software Download Center.

- You are logged on to the installation host as a user with root permissions.
- Caution

Before updating runtime instances, make sure all dispatchers, that you created manually, are stopped and no jobs are running.

• You have stopped the Virtual Directory Server. See Starting and Stopping SAP Identity Management Virtual Directory Server [page 183]

Procedure

- 1. Start the Software Provisioning Manager on the host where you installed SAP Identity Management components.
- 2. On the *Welcome* screen, choose the required option.

To update an SAP Identity Management system, choose SAP Identity Management 8.0 > Update potion.

3. You can update the following system variants and additional components:

Standard System

This option updates all must-have components of an system on one host.

Update	Description
SAP Identity Management Standard System	Updates all components of an SAP Identity Manage- ment 8.0 system on one host:
	 Updates SAP Identity Management 8.0 Core Updates SAP Identity Management 8.0 Dispatcher Instance with Runtime Components Updates the following required SAP Identity Man-
	 SAP Identity Management 8.0 User Interface SAP Identity Management 8.0 User Interface
	In addition, this option enables you to update the follow- ing optional components:
	SAP Identity Management 8.0 REST Interface Ver- sion 2
	 SAP Identity Management 8.0 User Interface for HTML5
	 SAP Identity Management 8.0 Portal Content Identity Federation
	Update of a Virtual Directory Server instance

Distributed System

Options to update SAP Identity Management 8.0 instances distributed over several hosts

Update	Description
SAP Identity Management Core ComponentsSAP Identity Management	Updates the SAP Identity Management 8.0 Core on one host.
SAP Identity Management Dispatcher Instance	Updates SAP Identity Management 8.0 Dispatcher In- stance with Runtime Components on this host.

Update	Description
SAP Identity Management Components on SAP NetWeaver AS Java	Run this option on a host where SAP NetWeaver AS Java is installed and where is at least one AS Java in- stance running.
	This option updates the following required SAP Identity Management components on this host:
	SAP Identity Management 8.0 Developer Studio Service
	SAP Identity Management 8.0 User Interface
	In addition, this option enables you to update the follow- ing optional components:
	SAP Identity Management 8.0 REST Interface Ver- sion 2
	 SAP Identity ManagementSAP 8.0 User Interface for HTML5
	SAP Identity Management 8.0 Portal Content
	Identity Federation

• Additional Components

Options to update additional SAP Identity Management 8.0 components.

Update	Description
SAP Identity Management Virtual Directory Server (VDS)	Updates a Virtual Directory Server instance of SAP Identity Management on this host.
SAP Identity Management Components on SAP NetWeaver AS Java	Updates the following SAP Identity Management components on this host:
	 SAP Identity Management 8.0 REST Interface Version 2 SAP Identity Management 8.0 User Interface for HTML
	SAP Identity Management 8.0 Portal ContentIdentity Federation

4. Follow the instructions in the Software Provisioning Manager input dialogs.

$\mathbf{i}\,\mathsf{Note}$

When updating the database, the identity store schema is also updated. By default, the update of the identity store schema does not override the existing schema. That is, only new attributes and entry types are added to the database and the existing ones are preserved.

Results

SAP Identity Management 8.0 system is updated.

Next Steps

You can proceed with the following steps:

- 1. Unpack the Core Component [page 81] that contains the configuration packages, database scripts and some additional components.
 - 1. Reimport the configuration packages. See Updating the Provisioning Framework
 - 2. (Optional) To update Password Hook, see Upgrading Password Hook.
- 2. Update the SAP Identity Management Developer Studio [page 212]

3.2 Updating SAP Identity Management Components

This section describes how to update SAP Identity Management components. The update procedure is relevant only for manual SAP Identity Management installations.

Make sure that all installed components of SAP Identity Management are updated to the latest patch levels (PLs) of the corresponding SP level. This is recommended because of probable future releases of dependent component versions. The omission of update to the latest patch version of a component may result in errors and unexpected behavior.

Prerequisites

As of version 8.0 SP04 and higher, SAP Identity Management software components are delivered as *. SAR files. You require the SAPCAR archiving tool to be able to unpack software component archives (*. SAR files).

Make sure the latest version of the SAPCAR archiving tool is available on each installation host. You can download the latest version of SAPCAR from:

http://support.sap.com/swdc 🐅 Support Packages and Patches 🔪 A - Z Index 📚 S 📎 SAPCAR 🕽

For more information about SAPCAR, see SAP Note 212876

Next Steps

If you are updating SAP Identity Management to version 8.0 SP05 or higher, you must use SAP JVM version 8.1 (Java 1.8). After the update, you need to regenerate the dispatcher scripts. For more information, see Managing the Dispatcher(s) [page 199].

3.2.1 Updating SAP Identity Management Core

This section describes how to update an Identity Management database on the supported database systems.

SAP Identity Management supports the following database systems:

- Oracle
- IBM DB2
- SAP Adaptive Server Enterprise (SAP ASE)

Choose the update description that corresponds to your database system.

i Note

Before you install a new version, it is important that any services (dispatchers) are stopped and that no jobs are running.

When updating the database, the identity store schema is also updated. This requires a Java environment on the server where the command file is run. The server does not need to be the same as the database server.

By default, the update of the identity store schema does not override the existing schema. That is, only new attributes and entry types are added to the database and the existing ones are preserved.

Related Information

Installing the Java Runtime Environment [page 195] Installing the JDBC Drivers [page 26]

3.2.1.1 Updating Identity Management Database on Oracle

You want to know how to update the Identity Management database on Oracle.

Prerequisites

You require the SAPCAR archiving tool to be able to unpack software component archives (*. SAR files).

Context

i Note

Before updating the Identity Management database, make sure that a backup has been made of the database.

To update an Identity Management database, proceed as follows:

Procedure

- 1. In the SAP Software Download Center, navigate to the area of SAP Identity Management 8.0 and download the installation kit for the Core component.
- 2. Unpack the installation kit using the following command:

```
SAPCAR -xvf <your-SAR-file>
```

3. Open a command prompt and navigate to the directory containing the Identity Management database script files.

The script files are located in the /DatabaseSchema/Oracle folder.

i Note

All the scripts in that folder should have execute permission. In addition, the script files need write access to the folder where they are run from, so if the installation kit is located on a CD or another read-only location, copy the folder with the database scripts to a location with write access before running them.

${f i}$ Note

Check whether the prefix of the Identity Management database is case sensitive.

Make sure that you have the same include.sql file as you used during installation.

- 4. Run the command file mxmc-update.sh. You are prompted for the following:
 - JDBC URL to the Identity Management database (in double quotes). The syntax is jdbc:oracle:thin:PREFIX_oper/PWDOPER@<host>:<port>:<SID>
 - The path to the JDBC driver used when connecting to the database (in double quotes). For example, /usr/sap/IdM/Identity Center/jdbc/ojdbc6.jar.
 - The password for mxmc_oper

i Note

It can contain the following characters: _, #, \$, a-z, A-Z, 0-9. It must not begin with a digit nor an underscore.

If you are upgrading to SAP Identity Management 8.0, you are prompted for the following information:

• The name of the *Developer Administrator* for this database.

i Note

This user must either exist in the UME or be added to the UME before you can log on to the Identity Management Developer Studio.

• The base qualified name to be used for all packages in this database.

You can check the mxmc-update.log log file for warnings or errors.

5. Close the command prompt window.

Related Information

Creating the Developer Administrator User in UME

3.2.1.2 Updating Identity Management Database on IBM DB2

You want to know how to update the Identity Management database on IBM DB2.

Prerequisites

You require the SAPCAR archiving tool to be able to unpack software component archives (*. SAR files).

Context

i Note

Before updating the Identity Management database, make sure that a backup has been made of the database.

i Note

Make sure that you use the same values in the include.sql file as you used during installation. The following parameters are required in the include.sql file: PREFIX, DB2PORT, PWDOPER, ADMINUSER, BASENAME, JDBCURL, JDBCDRIVER.

Procedure

- 1. In the SAP Software Download Center, navigate to the area of SAP Identity Management 8.0 and download the installation kit for the Core component.
- 2. Unpack the installation kit using the following command:

SAPCAR -xvf <your-SAR-file>

3. Proceed as follows:

- For Unix/Linux: Open a command prompt.
- 4. Navigate to the directory containing the Identity Management script files.

The script files are located in the /DatabaseSchema/DB2 folder.

i Note

All the scripts in that folder should have execute permission. In addition, the script files need write access to the folder from where they are run. If the installation kit is located on a CD or another read-only location, you therefore have to copy the folder with the database scripts to a location with write access before running them.

i Note

Take care when editing shell scripts (.sh files) in Windows format. Make sure the shell scripts are saved in Unix format.

i Note

Check whether the prefix of the Identity Management database is case sensitive.

- 5. Run command file mxmc-update.sh (Unix). You are prompted for the following:
 - JDBC URL to the Identity Management database
 - The path to the JDBC driver used when connecting to the database
 - Password for <prefix>_oper

i Note

It can contain the following characters: _, #, \$, a-z, A-Z, 0-9. It must not begin with a digit nor an underscore.

If you are upgrading to SAP Identity Management 8.0, you are prompted for the following information:

• The name of the Developer Administrator for this database.

i Note

This user must either exist in the UME or be added to the UME before you can log on to the Identity Management Developer Studio.

• The base qualified name to be used for all packages in this database.

You can check the mxmc-update.log log file for warnings or errors.

6. Close the command prompt window.

Related Information

Creating the Developer Administrator User in UME

3.2.1.3 Updating Identity Management Database on SAP ASE

You want to know how to update the Identity Management database on SAP ASE.

Prerequisites

The update scripts require a Java Rruntime Engine and a JDBC driver to update the database schema.

You require the SAPCAR archiving tool to be able to unpack software component archives (*. SAR files).

Context

i Note

Before updating the Identity Management database, make sure that a backup has been made of the database.

To update an Identity Management database, proceed as follows:

Procedure

- 1. In the SAP Software Download Center, navigate to the area of SAP Identity Management 8.0 and download the installation kit for the Core component.
- 2. Unpack the installation kit using the following command:

SAPCAR -xvf <your-SAR-file>

3. Open a command prompt and navigate to the directory where the database installation scripts are located.

The script files are located in the /DatabaseSchema/ASE folder.

i Note

All the scripts in that folder should have execute permission. In addition, the script files need write access to the folder from where they are run, so if the installation kit is located on a CD or another read-only location, copy the folder with the database scripts to a location with write access before you run them.

i Note

Shell scripts are written for bash shell, thus the Unix operating system should have bash shell installed. All shell scripts should be executable before running them on Unix. Note that you might encounter some issues for other shell types in Unix.

i Note

Check whether the prefix of the Identity Management database is case sensitive.

i Note

The isql command line tool must be installed on the machine where the scripts are executed. This is required for the SAP Identity Management scripts to function properly. The isql command line tool is provided either with the ASE server installation or with the ASE OpenServer client which is a part of the ASE SDK Suite.

- 4. Run the command file mxmc-update.sh. You are prompted for the following information:
 - The path and name of the JDBC driver used when connecting to the database (in double quotes). For example, For example: <ase_install_directory>/jConnect-16_0/classes/jconn4.jar.
 - The password for mxmc_oper.

If the file completes without error messages, the database is updated correctly. You can also check the <prefix>_update.log log file.

5. Close the command prompt window.

3.2.2 Updating Runtime Components

i Note

Before you install a new version, it is important that any services (dispatchers) are stopped and that no jobs are running.

An update is performed by running the installation job as described in *Installing the Runtime Components on a Unix Platform*.

Next Steps

- 1. After the update, you may be prompted to restart the server. This will be the case if any services were running while you updated.
- 2. You need to regenerate the dispatcher scripts and then start the dispatchers. See *Managing the Dispatcher*(s).

Related Information

Installing the Runtime Components on a Unix Platform [page 197] Managing the Dispatcher(s) [page 199]

3.2.2.1 Installing the Java Runtime Environment

The runtime components of Identity Management require a Java Virtual Machine. It must be installed on all of the servers running one of the Identity Management components:

- Dispatcher
- Runtime engine (Java)

SAP Identity Management 8.0 supports only SAP JVM. You should use SAP JVM, where version 8.1 (Java 1.8) is required for the runtime components and the Virtual Directory Server. For information about how to download the SAP JVM, see SAP Note 1442124

All SAP Identity Management components deployed on SAP NetWeaver AS for Java can run with SAP JVM version 6.1 (Java 1.6).

i Note

For an overview of the installation prerequisites for the SAP JVM, see SAP Note 1367498 // .

i Note

If you run on a 64-bit platform, you can install either the 32-bit or the 64-bit version of the Java Runtime Environment. If you use Oracle as your database system, make sure that the version of the Java Runtime Environment matches the version of the database client.

Java Cryptographic Extension Jurisdiction Policy Files

The Java Cryptographic Extension Jurisdiction Policy files are a prerequisite for the SAP JVM must be downloaded separately as described in SAP Note 1240081².

3.2.2.2 Installing the JDBC Drivers

The JDBC drivers are used by the runtime components to access databases, both the Identity Management database and other data sources that are accessed using JDBC.

The SAP NetWeaver AS for Java running the Identity Management user interface needs the JDBC driver to access the Identity Management database.

The correct JDBC driver must be installed on all servers running any of the following components:

- Runtime components
 - Dispatcher JDBC driver for the Identity Management database
 - Runtime engine (Java) JDBC driver(s) for the Identity Management database and any other databases/data sources that are accessed
- Identity Management Developer Studio service JDBC driver for the Identity Management database

• Identity Management user interface - JDBC driver for the Identity Management database

Related Information

Oracle JDBC Driver [page 27] IBM DB2 JDBC Driver [page 27] SAP ASE JDBC Driver [page 28] JDBC Drivers for External Systems [page 28]

3.2.2.2.1 Oracle JDBC Driver

Use the recommended JDBC driver for your Oracle version.

You can download the JDBC driver ojdbc<JDK version>.jar for your Oracle version from the Oracle JDBC Downloads page. Follow the installation instructions provided on the installation web page.

Related Information

Oracle Web Site 📌

3.2.2.2.2 IBM DB2 JDBC Driver

The JDBC driver for IBM DB2 is installed with the database client.

By default it is installed in this folder:

• UNIX: /opt/ibm/db2/V10.1/java, where /opt/ibm/db2/V10.1/ is where IBM DB2 is installed.

The file name is: db2jcc4.jar.

The JDBC driver name is: com.ibm.db2.jcc.DB2Driver.

Make sure that the file name is added to the classpath.

3.2.2.2.3 SAP ASE JDBC Driver

Use the following JDBC driver:

Database Version	JDBC Driver Version
SAP ASE 16.0	JDBC 4.0
The JDBC driver for SAP ASE is installed with the datab folder:	ase client. By default it is installed in the following

<ASE_install_directory>/jConnect-16_0/classes/jconn4.jar

The name of the JDBC driver is: com.sybase.jdbc4.jdbc.SybDriver

Make sure that the CLASSPATH is set to the correct file: <ASE_install_directory>/jConnect-16_0/ classes/jconn4.jar.

▲ Caution

If you experience issues with the JDBC connection, refer to the SAP Note 2270221/2.

3.2.2.2.4 JDBC Drivers for External Systems

Any JDBC drivers that are accessed by the runtime components must be installed and made available on all servers. These JDBC drivers must be obtained from the vendor of the database or another data source.

3.2.2.3 Installing the Runtime Components on a Unix Platform

Prerequisites

A graphical environment (X) is required on the Unix system.

Context

To install Identity Management Runtime Components on a Unix platform, proceed as follows:

Procedure

- 1. Navigate to the download area of SAP Identity Management 8.0 on the SAP Software Download Center and download the installation kit for Identity Management Runtime Components.
- 2. Unpack the installation kit using the following command:

```
SAPCAR -xvf <your-SAR-file>
```

3. The installation kit contains installers for several Unix platforms in sub-folders of the \RuntimeComponents\Setup\CDROM_Installers folder. Copy the folder corresponding to your Unix platform to the Unix server where you want to perform the installation.

${f i}$ Note

Make sure to transfer the files as *Binary*.

- 4. Log in as root on the Unix system and navigate to the folder where you copied the installation files.
- 5. Make the install.bin file located in the folder <platform>\Disk1\InstData\NoVM executable.
- 6. Set *JAVA_HOME* to point to the Java Runtime Environment (version 8 or higher).
- 7. Run the installer install.bin. The wizard leads you through the installation. Keep the default values or enter values specific for your installation. The default installation path is /usr/sap/idm/ identitycenter. You can remove the space to avoid a path containing space.

Related Information

SAP Software Download Center on SAP Support Portal

3.2.2.4 Managing the Dispatcher(s)

To manage the dispatcher(s), you use SAP Identity Management Dispatcher Utility. The utility offers a graphical user interface for dispatcher handling. Alternatively, you can use commands allowing you to manage the dispatcher(s) without using the graphical user interface.

Prerequisites

- The Keys.ini file is available. The file is created and maintained centrally using the SAP Identity Management Keys Utility and then distributed manually to necessary locations.
- The system administrator must limit the operating system user running the dispatcher to access SAP Identity Management installation directory, jobs and processes directories, only. See Preventing Path Traversal Attacks.

Context

The utility is available on the installation set for Runtime components, and its directory is <IdM install directory>/Identity_Center (by default after installation /usr/sap/idm/Identity Center).

To manage dispatchers using the utility's graphical user interface, proceed with the following steps:

Procedure

- 1. From a command prompt, navigate to the directory /usr/sap/idm/Identity Center.
- 2. Start the utility user interface by executing the command **dispatcherutil gui** (use the file dispatcherutil.sh for Unix).

This opens the SAP Identity Management Dispatcher Utility dialog box (the graphical user interface).

- 3. To set a default dispatcher, select it from the dispatcher list and choose Set Default.
- 4. You can choose *Start* from the menu on the right (or select) *Dispatcher* > *Start*] from the main menu) to start the created and installed dispatcher service. Both the service state and the status of the dispatcher will change to *Running*. You may have to choose *Refresh* (or select) *File* > *Refresh*] from the main menu) to update the fields.

By default, the dispatcher is started automatically each time the system is started.

5. Once the dispatcher is up and running, you have the possibility to:

Option	Description
Suspend the dispatcher	Select the running dispatcher you want to suspend from the list and choose the <i>Suspend</i> button from the menu on the right (alternatively, select) <i>Dispatcher Suspend</i> from the main menu). When suspended, the dispatcher service will still be running (state), but its processing is suspended (status).
	i Note The <i>Suspend</i> button is not visible if the dispatcher is already suspended (you will then only see the <i>Resume</i> button).
Resume the	Select the suspended dispatcher you want to resume from the list and choose the Resume button
dispatcher from the menu on the right (alternatively, select When resumed, the dispatcher service is running).	from the menu on the right (alternatively, select \triangleright <i>Dispatcher</i> \triangleright <i>Resume</i> from the main menu). When resumed, the dispatcher service is running and processing (both its state and status are <i>Running</i>).
	i Note The <i>Resume</i> button is not visible if the dispatcher is already running (you will then only see the <i>Suspend</i> button).
Stop the dis- patcher	Select the dispatcher you want to stop from the list and choose the <i>Stop</i> button from the menu on the right (alternatively, select \triangleright <i>Dispatcher</i> \triangleright <i>Stop</i> \square from the main menu).
Delete the dis- patcher	Select the dispatcher you want to delete from the list and choose the <i>Delete</i> button from the menu on the right (alternatively, select $File Delete$ from the main menu). Deleting the dispatcher will also delete the generated dispatcher files.
	i Note The dispatcher must be stopped (not running) before it can be deleted.
	i Note Deleting a dispatcher will remove any reference to it (e.g. from jobs) as well. You have to reconfig- ure the dispatcher for the affected jobs.
Regenerate the dispatcher scripts	From the dispatcher list, select the dispatcher you want to regenerate the scripts for and select <i>Dispatcher Regenerate Scripts</i> from the main menu). You would normally regenerate the scripts for a dispatcher after a configuration change.

6. You can create as many dispatchers as you need, which will be listed in the dispatcher list. To update the list and the displayed dispatcher properties, choose the *Refresh* button from the menu on the right or select File Refresh from the main menu. To exit the utility and close its graphical user interface, select File Exit from the main menu.

3.2.2.4.1 Using Commands to Manage the Dispatcher(s)

A set of commands is available with SAP Identity Management Dispatcher Utility, allowing you to manage the dispatcher(s) without using the graphical user interface.

The following set of commands is available:

i Note

From a command prompt, navigate to the directory /usr/sap/idm/Identity Center. Use the file dispatcherutil.sh for Unix.

i Note

Commands are case sensitive. Make sure you use lower case.

Command		Description
dispatcherutil		Displays the usage information for the utility.
dispatcherutil name>	set_default <dispatcher< td=""><td>Sets an installed dispatcher as the default one.</td></dispatcher<>	Sets an installed dispatcher as the default one.
dispatcherutil	start <dispatcher name=""></dispatcher>	Starts the installed dispatcher with the given name.
dispatcherutil	suspend <dispatcher name=""></dispatcher>	Suspends a running dispatcher. The dispatcher service will still be running, but its processing is on hold (suspended).
dispatcherutil	resume <dispatcher name=""></dispatcher>	Resumes a suspended dispatcher. The dispatcher service will then be running and processing.
dispatcherutil	stop <dispatcher name=""></dispatcher>	Immediately stops the running dispatcher with the given name (hard stop).
dispatcherutil name>	softstop <dispatcher< td=""><td>Stops the running dispatcher with the given name, when the ongoing processes handled by the dispatcher have completed (soft stop).</td></dispatcher<>	Stops the running dispatcher with the given name, when the ongoing processes handled by the dispatcher have completed (soft stop).
dispatcherutil	delete <dispatcher name=""></dispatcher>	Deletes the stopped dispatcher with the given name.
		The belonging service script files and the property file of the given dispatcher will also be deleted.
dispatcherutil	list	Lists all available dispatchers in the dispatcher list.
dispatcherutil	gui	Opens the SAP Identity Management Dispatcher Utility dialog box (the graphical user interface).
dispatcherutil	set_jdbc_url <jdbc url=""></jdbc>	Defines the connection string to access the Identity Management database for the <prefix> rt user.</prefix>

Command	Description
	Note that the JDBC URL must be enclosed in double quotes ("").

3.2.3 Updating Identity Management Developer Studio Service

Context

To update the Identity Management Developer Studio service, proceed as follows:

Procedure

- 1. Download and deploy the new version of the Identity Management Developer Studio service as described in *Deploying the Identity Management Developer Studio Service*.
- 2. Review the Java system properties as described in *Configuring the Java System Properties*, and verify that the properties are still defined and valid.

i Note

If you are experiencing issues with the service after deployment, try uninstalling the deployed version and then re-deploying. To uninstall (undeploy) the service SCA file, you can use Telnet (see *Undeploying Using Telnet*).

Related Information

Deploying the Identity Management Developer Studio Service [page 203] Configuring the Java System Properties [page 208] Undeploying Using Telnet [page 211]

3.2.3.1 Deploying the Identity Management Developer Studio Service

Prerequisites

You require the SAPCAR archiving tool to be able to unpack software component archives (*. SAR files).

Context

To deploy the SAP Identity Management Developer Studio service on your SAP NetWeaver AS for Java, proceed as follows:

Procedure

- 1. In the SAP Software Download Center, navigate to the area of SAP Identity Management 8.0 and download the installation set for IDMCLMRESTAPI component.
- 2. Unpack the installation kit using the following command:

```
SAPCAR -xvf <your-SAR-file>
```

- 3. Make sure that your have the Identity Management Developer Studio service to be deployed (the SCA file IDMCLMRESTAPI<version>.SCA) available on your system.
- 4. Use the Software Update Manager (SUM) to deploy the SCA file on your SAP NetWeaver AS for Java.

For more information, see: Using the Software Update Manager (SUM) 1.0

i Note

For the performance purposes it is recommended that the Identity Management Developer Studio service is installed on the same server where the Identity Management database is installed.

Related Information

SAP Software Download Center (SAP Support Portal)

3.2.3.1.1 Using the Software Update Manager (SUM) 1.0

The Software Update Manager (SUM) is a multi-purpose tool that supports various processes, such as performing a release upgrade, installing enhancement packages, applying Support Package Stacks, installing add-ons, or updating single components on SAP NetWeaver.

Prerequisites

 Make sure that the latest version of Software Update Manager 1.0 is downloaded and available on your SAP NetWeaver AS for Java. Software Update Manager 1.0 is part of the Software Logistics Toolset delivery and available for download from SAP Software Download Center. You can download the SUM archive from the main Software Logistics Toolset page

at: https://support.sap.com/en/tools/software-logistics-tools.html

UPDATE MANAGER 1.0 SUPPORT PACKAGE PATCHES < your OS>].

- You can access the SUM documentation from the main Software Logistics Toolset page at: https://support.sap.com/en/tools/software-logistics-tools.html Software Update Manager (SUM) scenarios
 Software Update/Upgrade with SUM 1.0 SP<Version> Guides for SUM 1.0 SP<Version> For SAP NetWeaver AS for Java, there are specific guides for the combinations of operating systems and databases.
- Before running and using the SUM 1.0, you have to complete all required preparation and planning actions in the SUM 1.0 user guide.
- Make sure that the SAP system and its database are started.
- On the host where you want to start the SL Common GUI of the Software Update Manager, Java 6 or higher has to be installed.
- SAP Host Agent has been configured on your system with the minimum version required for your scenario. For more information, see *Installing or Updating SAP Host Agent* in the *Update of SAP Systems Using Software Update Manager* guide that is relevant for your operating system and database.

Context

In the case of SAP Identity Management, you need SUM in the following processes:

• SAP Identity Management installation with SWPM

In this case, you need SUM to deploy AS Java Extensions (SCA files) on the SAP NetWeaver AS Java system as a prerequisite for the following two components:

SAP Identity Management User Interface for HTML5

For more information about the SCA files, see Prerequisites and Dependencies Between Deployable Components [page 28]

- SAP Identity Management manual update (that is, without using SWPM) In this case, you need SUM to deploy the new version of SAP Identity Management components that are deployed on SAP NetWeaver AS Java system:
 - SAP Identity Management Developer Studio Service

- SAP Identity Management User Interface
- SAP Identity Management REST Interface version 2
- SAP Identity Management User Interface for HTML5
- SAP Identity Management Portal Content
- Identity Federation

For more information about deploying a new version of SAP Identity Management components, see the topics under Updating SAP Identity Management Components [page 188] section.

To start and use the Software Update Manager 1.0, proceed as follows:

Procedure

- 1. Get the Software Update Manager running on the primary application server instance, as described in Running the Software Update Manager [page 34]
- 2. Start the SL Common GUI of the Software Update Manager, as described in Starting the SL Common GUI of the Software Update Manager [page 35].
- 3. Logon to the Software Update Manager and deploy the SCA file(s), as described in Deploying Using the Software Update Manager [page 36].

3.2.3.1.1.1 Running the Software Update Manager

Context

To run the Software Update Manager on the application server (primary application server instance), proceed as follows:

Procedure

- 1. Log on to the host on which the primary application server instance is running as user <SAPSID>adm (instance user).
- 2. Unpack the Software Update Manager package (<archive>.SAR) with the following command:
 - for UNIX:

SAPCAR -xf <download directory>/<path>/<Archive>.SAR -R /usr/sap/<sid>

This command creates the directory SUM under the /usr/sap/<sid> directory. You can also specify a directory other than /usr/sap/<sid>. In the following, the directory /<path to SUM directory>/SUM is referred to as <update directory>.

i Note

The complete path to the SUM folder must not exceed 30 characters.

- 3. Start the Software Update Manager entering the following command:
 - for UNIX:

```
cd /usr/sap/<SID>/SUM
./STARTUP confighostagent <SID>
```

i Note

Always call the script with the root user.

Related Information

Using the Software Update Manager (SUM) 1.0 [page 33]

3.2.3.1.1.2 Starting the SL Common GUI of the Software Update Manager

Context

This section describes how you start the SL Common UI and the SUM back-end process.

Procedure

- 1. Open a web browser window.
- In the address bar, enter the following URL: https://<hostname>:1129/lmsl/sumjava/<SID>/ index.html.

Replace <hostname> with the name of the host on which the Software Update Manager is running.

i Note

If the SSL is not configured, use http instead of https at the beginning of the URL, and use port 1128: http://<hostname>:1128/lmsl/sumjava/<SID>/index.html

3. In the dialog box that appears, enter the user name **<sid>adm** and the password.

Results

The SAP Host Agent starts the Software Update Manager, and the SL Common GUI of the Software Update Manager is displayed in the web browser.

Related Information

Using the Software Update Manager (SUM) 1.0 [page 33]

3.2.3.1.1.3 Deploying Using the Software Update Manager

Context

The Software Update Manager controls the entire procedure, from checking the system requirements and importing the necessary programs through stopping production operation until production operation is resumed. The procedure is divided up into a number of different roadmap steps. The roadmap steps are in turn divided into phases. Many phases require no user input - step through those by choosing *Next*. The successful completion of a phase is a precondition for the success of all subsequent phases.

i Note

User actions are also required when errors occur. If an error occurs, correct it and repeat the phase in which the error has occurred. Once the phase has been repeated successfully, you can continue with the update.

To logon to the Software Update Manager and deploy the SCA file(s), do the following:

Procedure

- 1. Enter the user name and the password for the AS Java administrator user with which you log in to the system.
- 2. In the *Specify Credentials* roadmap step, specify the password for the instance user (<sapsid>adm), and then choose *Next*.
- 3. In the Select Target roadmap step, specify the path to the SCA file in the Directory field, then choose Next.
- 4. In the *Confirm Target* roadmap step, enter the keyword that is specified in the current *Central Software Update Manager Note* (which you can find in the Software Update Manager upgrade guide or in SAP Support Portal). Confirm the selected target system version by choosing *Next*.
- 5. In the *Configuration* roadmap step, provide the password of the AS Java administrator before proceeding. In this step it is also possible to specify the composition of the target release system.

6. Step through the phases requiring no user input by choosing *Next* and complete the process. Upon completing the process successfully, the important statistics are collected in a comprehensive report.

Next Steps

Every time you have used SUM, you need to either delete the SUM folder or rename it and keep it (if you would like, but this is not necessary). Then you have to extract a new SUM folder from the SUM. SAR file.

Use SAPCAR.EXE to extract the SAR file. Do the following:

- 1. In the command prompt, change to the directory to which you have downloaded or copied the SUM archives (the directory of the SUM. SAR file).
- Start SAPCAR to extract the archive to the current directory. Enter
 <path to sapcar.exe>\sapcar.exe -xvf SUM.SAR
 and run the command line.
- 3. The SUM. SAR file should now be extracted and the new SUM folder created. You may now use SUM again.

Related Information

SAP Notes & SAP Knowledge Base Articles Using the Software Update Manager (SUM) 1.0 [page 33]

3.2.3.2 Configuring the Java System Properties

You can change the settings or properties of your SAP NetWeaver AS for Java, or deployed applications/ services on your SAP NetWeaver AS for Java.

To configure the properties for the deployed Identity Management Developer Studio service and Identity Management REST Interface version 2 on your SAP NetWeaver AS for Java, follow the descriptions of how to manage the properties in Java System Properties tool for your SAP NetWeaver version:

- Java System Properties for SAP NetWeaver 7.3
- Java System Properties for SAP NetWeaver 7.3 EHP1
- Java System Properties for SAP NetWeaver 7.4
- Java System Properties for SAP NetWeaver 7.5

Identity Management Developer Studio service

Log on to SAP NetWeaver Administrator and choose Configuration Infrastructure Java System Properties Applications . Following the descriptions for your SAP NetWeaver AS for Java, configure the following properties for the *idmdevstudio* application (service): Properties for idmdevstudio application (service)

Property	Value
com.sap.idm.rcp.crypt.keyfile	A full path to the file holding the 3DES keys, i.e. the Keys . ini file. For example:
	for UNIX: /usr/sap/IdM/Identity Center/Key/Keys.ini
	i Note
	If SAP NetWeaver AS for Java is not installed on the same host as the Runtime components, the Keys.ini file that is located in the folder: /usr/sap/IdM/ Identity Center/Key should be copied to the / sapmnt directory of the AS Java. It is the global direc- tory of SAP NetWeaver AS Java which is accessible for all Java instances in cluster environment. Ensure that the <sid>adm user has the proper permis-</sid>
	sions to copy the Keys.ini file to the /sapmnt direc- tory of the AS Java.
com.sap.idm.rcp.dsehome.java	Path to sapjvm 8, unless you are using Java 8 by default.
com.sap.idm.rcp.jdbcdriverjar	Path to the JDBC driver JAR file. For example:
	for UNIX: <ase_install_directory>/ jConnect-16_0/classes/jconn4.jar</ase_install_directory>
	This can also be a list of paths (to several JDBC driver JAR files). List items are separated as follows:
	: in Unix/Linux based systems
com.sap.idm.rcp.jdbcdrivers	A list of JDBC driver names.
	For example, oracle.jdbc.driver.Oracle- Driver;com.ibm.db2.jcc.DB2Driver;com.sap.db.jdbc.Driver;c om.sybase.jdbc4.jdbc.SybDriver.
	i Note
	List items are separated as follows:
	: in Unix/Linux based systems

Property	Value
com.sap.idm.rcp.dsehome	The path relative to which the runtime engine is found. For example:
	For UNIX: /usr/sap/IdM/Identity Center
	This is needed for data discovery purposes.
com.sap.idm.rcp.multicheckouts	 Controls whether multiple users are allowed to check out one and the same configuration package. False - Only one user is allowed to check out a package and work on its configuration. This is the default value.
	 <i>True</i> - Multiple users are allowed to check out a package and work simultaneously on its configuration.
	i Note
	Be careful when setting this property to <i>True</i> . We do not recommend multiple users to check out one and the same package. If multiple users modify one and the same package object, (for example, a process) they will override each other's changes.
	i Note
	The first user who checks in the package, checks in (saves) the changes of all the users that checked out this package.
	i Note
	Allowing multiple users to check out one and the same package is suitable for systems that are up- graded from version 7.2. In this case, all configu- rations are placed into one default package that needs to be restructured manually into multiple packages.

Identity Management REST Interface Version 2

Log on to SAP NetWeaver Administrator and choose Scheric Configuration Infrastructure Scheric Scheric

Properties for restapi-ear application

Property	Value
v2AllowHttp	You can configure SAP Identity Management REST Interface v2 to use HTTP or HTTPS communication.
	• <i>false</i> - Allows HTTPS communication. This is the default value.
	→ Recommendation For security reasons, it is recommended to you use HTTPS communication.
	 For more information how to configure the Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) on your SAP NetWeaver AS Java, see Using the HTTP Security (Secure Sockets Layer/ SSL) <i>true</i> - Allows HTTP communication.
v2ReturnNullValuesInResponse	Controls whether single value attributes for a specific entry with value null are returned in the response body.
	 true - Single value attributes for a specific entry with value null are returned in the response body. This is the default value. false - Single value attributes for a specific entry with value null are not returned in the response body.

3.2.3.3 Undeploying Using Telnet

To undeploy the SCA files from your SAP NetWeaver AS for Java, you can use Telnet.

Context

To undeploy a file using Telnet commands, do the following:

Procedure

1. Open a Telnet connection to your SAP NetWeaver AS for Java from which you want to undeploy the application. Enter the following command:telnet <host IP address> <port>, where <port> is the Telnet port of your server.

For example, if your server installation directory is \usr\sap\<some_three_letter_SID>\JCxx\..., then your Telnet port should be 5xx08. E.g. if the server installation is \usr\sap\N73\J30\... then the Telnet port is 53008.

- 2. Log on using your SAP NetWeaver AS for Java administrator username and password.
- 3. When you have logged on, type the following Telnet command: > lsc. This will list the cluster elements.
- 4. Find Server 0 and look up the value in the *ID* column. Enter your next command: > jump x, where X is this ID value.
- 5. Enter the following commands:
 - > add deploy
 - > undeploy name=<name of the component> vendor=<the vendor of the component>

In this case, the name of the component is *idmdevstudio* and the vendor is *sap.com*, resulting in the following undeploy command:> undeploy name=idmdevstudio vendor=sap.com

 ${f i}$ Note

Using the command undeploy -h, you can get more information about the command syntax.

3.2.4 Updating Identity Management Developer Studio

Context

When updating the Identity Management Developer Studio client, you need to do this on each developer or developer administrator machine where it is installed.

i Note

Use Eclipse version Oxygen.

You can update the Identity Management Developer Studio from the following locations:

- Eclipse update site: https://tools.hana.ondemand.com/oxygen Use this option to update the Identity Management Developer Studio to the latest support package (SP) level and to apply patches for this SP.
- SAP Software Download Center: https://support.sap.com/swdc/>
 Use this option if your Identity Management 8.0 system is not updated to the latest SP and you want to apply patches for the Identity Management Developer Studio for your current (lower) SP.

Updating to the Latest SP Level and Applying Patches

Context

You want to update your Identity Management Developer Studio to the latest SP and to apply patches for this SP.

Procedure

1. In the Eclipse environment, from your SAP Identity Management perspective, select Help Check for Updates from the main menu.

The provided repository sites for the software are checked for updates. Available updates (if any) are displayed in the *Available Updates* dialog box.

- 2. Select SAP Identity Management Developer Studio (select the check-box in front of the name), and choose Next >.
- 3. Review any update details and confirm the update by choosing Next >.
- 4. Review the licenses and choose *l* accept the terms of the license agreement.
- 5. Choose Finish.

The installation will proceed to self-signing of the content. Select the provided certificate (localSigning; localSigning) and choose *OK*.

- 6. You will need to restart Eclipse for the changes to take effect. Choose Yes to restart immediately, or *No* to restart later.
- 7. In the tree view, expand the *Root* node and then the node for your Identity Management database. Provide the credentials for your initial administrator user for Identity Management Developer Studio to login.

Applying Patches for Lower SP Levels

Context

Your Identity Management 8.0 system is not updated to the latest SP and you want to apply patches for the Identity Management Developer Studio for your current (lower) SP.

i Note

You can only download the latest available patch for your current SP. For example, if you are running version 8.0 SP06, you can only download patch level 25.

Procedure

- 1. In the SAP Software Download Center, navigate to the area of SAP Identity Management 8.0 and download the . zIP archive for the IDM CONFIG LM FOR ECLIPSE 8.0 component (https://support.sap.com/swdc) Software Downloads Support Packages & Patches (A-Z) N SAP NW IDENTITY MANAGEMENT SAP IDENTITY MANAGEMENT 8.0 COMPRISED SOFTWARE COMPONENT VERSIONS IDM CONFIG LM FOR ECLIPSE 8.0 IDMCLMECLIPSE
- 2. In your Eclipse User Interface, select Help Install New Software... from the main menu.
- 3. Specify the repository site where the plugin is available from. Choose *Add...* to the right of the *Work with* field.
- 4. In the Add Repository dialog box, enter a descriptive name (for example, SAP Identity Management Developer Studio) in the Name field. In the Location field, choose Archive and add the IDMCLMECLIPSE<SP level>_<Patch level>-<GUID number>.ZIP file you have downloaded from the SAP Software Download Center

Choose OK to add the repository.

- 5. Select the defined repository from the list in the *Work with* field. The plugin for the SAP Identity Management Developer Studio appears in the list by opening the *SAP Identity Management Tools*.
- 6. Select SAP Identity Management Developer Studio checkbox and then choose Next >.

The installer will calculate the dependencies and installation details for the software, and display these (if any).

- 7. Choose Next >.
- 8. Review the licenses and choose *l* accept the terms of the license agreement.
- 9. Choose Finish.
- 10. You will need to restart Eclipse for the changes to take effect. Choose Yes to restart immediately, or *No* to restart later.

3.2.5 Updating the Virtual Directory Server

Prerequisites

You should use SAP JVM, where version 8.1 (Java 1.8) is required for the Virtual Directory Server. For information about how to download the SAP JVM, see SAP Note 1442124

Context

To update the Virtual Directory Server, proceed as follows:

Procedure

- 1. Update the software.
 - a. Stop any local services.

i Note

Deployments on SAP NetWeaver Application Server Java are not affected.

- b. Close the user interface.
- c. Update the software by running the installation job as described in *Installing the Virtual Directory Server*.

$\mathbf{i}\,\mathsf{Note}$

All data source templates are removed, except those prefixed with custom.

- 2. Update the configuration files.
 - a. To update the deployed configurations, you need to open the configuration file in the user interface. The configuration file is patched to the new version.
 - b. Restart any local services.
 - c. Redeploy deployed configurations.

Related Information

Installing the Virtual Directory Server [page 215]

3.2.5.1 Installing the Virtual Directory Server

Prerequisites

You require the SAPCAR archiving tool to be able to unpack software component archives (*. SAR files).

Context

To install the Virtual Directory Server, proceed as follows:

Procedure

- 1. In the SAP Software Download Center, navigate to the area of SAP Identity Management 8.0 and download the installation kit.
- 2. Unpack the installation set to a separate directory using the following command:

SAPCAR -xvf <your-SAR-file>

3. Start the installation job corresponding to your platform and supply the necessary information.

i Note

If changing to another path than the default installation path, make sure that the path does not contain spaces if you install on a Unix system.

Related Information

SAP Software Download Center on SAP Support Portal Command Line Switches to the Installation Job [page 216] Starting the Virtual Directory Server on Unix [page 217]

3.2.5.1.1 Command Line Switches to the Installation Job

You can use command line switches to the installation job to control:

- For silent install
- To specify a specific Java Virtual Machine

Silent install of the Virtual Directory Server

It is possible to start the installation job in silent mode by starting the installation job with a command line option: <setupfile> -silent.

When running the installation job in this mode, the installation wizard will not be displayed, and default values are used for the installation directory.
If you want to use another than the default installation directory, you can use a second command line switch: <setupfile> -silent -P installLocation=<Path to installdir>.

i Note

Make sure that the path does not contain spaces if you install on a Unix system.

Specifying a specific Java Virtual Machine

If there are more than one Java Virtual Machines on your computer, it may be necessary to specify which of them should be used when installing the Virtual Directory Server. You can use the following command line switch: <setupfile> -is:javahome <path to java home>.

3.2.5.1.2 Starting the Virtual Directory Server on Unix

How you start the Virtual Directory Server depends on the platform.

Prerequisites

A working X-Windows setup is required.

Context

To start the Virtual Directory Server on Unix, do the following:

Procedure

1. Navigate to the installation directory of the Virtual Directory Server.

The default is /usr/sap/idm/Virtual Directory Server.

2. Execute ./Virtual Directory Server.

3.2.6 Updating Identity Management User Interface

To update an already deployed Identity Management User Interface, download the updated SCA file and use Software Update Manager (SUM) to deploy the file as described in *Deploying the Identity Management User Interface*. The procedure is the same for the supported versions of SAP NetWeaver.

- SAP NetWeaver 7.3 SP09 or higher
- SAP NetWeaver 7.3 including Enhancement Package 1 SP06 Patch 3 or higher
- SAP NetWeaver 7.4 SP02 or higher
- SAP NetWeaver 7.5 SP08 or higher

Related Information

Deploying Identity Management User Interface [page 218]

3.2.6.1 Deploying Identity Management User Interface

Context

To deploy the Identity Management User Interface, proceed as follows:

Procedure

- 1. In the SAP Software Download Center, navigate to the download area of SAP Identity Management 8.0 and download the installation kit for the IDMIC component.
- 2. Unpack the installation kit using the following command:

SAPCAR -xvf <your-SAR-file>

The IDMIC<version>.SCA file is now ready to be deployed.

You can use Software Update Manager (SUM) to deploy the Identity Management User Interface.

Related Information

SAP Software Download Center on SAP Support Portal

3.2.6.1.1 Using the Software Update Manager (SUM) 1.0

The Software Update Manager (SUM) is a multi-purpose tool that supports various processes, such as performing a release upgrade, installing enhancement packages, applying Support Package Stacks, installing add-ons, or updating single components on SAP NetWeaver.

Prerequisites

- Make sure that the latest version of Software Update Manager 1.0 is downloaded and available on your SAP NetWeaver AS for Java. Software Update Manager 1.0 is part of the Software Logistics Toolset delivery and available for download from SAP Software Download Center. You can download the SUM archive from the main Software Logistics Toolset page at: https://support.sap.com/en/tools/software-logistics-tools.html Download SUM SOFTWARE UPDATE MANAGER 1.0 SUPPORT PACKAGE PATCHES
- You can access the SUM documentation from the main Software Logistics Toolset page at: https://support.sap.com/en/tools/software-logistics-tools.html Software Update Manager (SUM) scenarios
 Software Update/Upgrade with SUM 1.0 SP<Version> Guides for SUM 1.0 SP<Version> For SAP NetWeaver AS for Java, there are specific guides for the combinations of operating systems and databases.
- Before running and using the SUM 1.0, you have to complete all required preparation and planning actions in the SUM 1.0 user guide.
- Make sure that the SAP system and its database are started.
- On the host where you want to start the SL Common GUI of the Software Update Manager, Java 6 or higher has to be installed.
- SAP Host Agent has been configured on your system with the minimum version required for your scenario. For more information, see *Installing or Updating SAP Host Agent* in the *Update of SAP Systems Using Software Update Manager* guide that is relevant for your operating system and database.

Context

In the case of SAP Identity Management, you need SUM in the following processes:

- SAP Identity Management installation with SWPM In this case, you need SUM to deploy AS Java Extensions (SCA files) on the SAP NetWeaver AS Java system as a prerequisite for the following two components:
 - SAP Identity Management User Interface for HTML5

For more information about the SCA files, see Prerequisites and Dependencies Between Deployable Components [page 28]

• SAP Identity Management manual update (that is, without using SWPM)

In this case, you need SUM to deploy the new version of SAP Identity Management components that are deployed on SAP NetWeaver AS Java system:

- SAP Identity Management Developer Studio Service
- SAP Identity Management User Interface
- SAP Identity Management REST Interface version 2
- SAP Identity Management User Interface for HTML5
- SAP Identity Management Portal Content
- Identity Federation

For more information about deploying a new version of SAP Identity Management components, see the topics under Updating SAP Identity Management Components [page 188] section.

To start and use the Software Update Manager 1.0, proceed as follows:

Procedure

- 1. Get the Software Update Manager running on the primary application server instance, as described in Running the Software Update Manager [page 34]
- 2. Start the SL Common GUI of the Software Update Manager, as described in Starting the SL Common GUI of the Software Update Manager [page 35].
- 3. Logon to the Software Update Manager and deploy the SCA file(s), as described in Deploying Using the Software Update Manager [page 36].

3.2.6.1.1.1 Running the Software Update Manager

Context

To run the Software Update Manager on the application server (primary application server instance), proceed as follows:

Procedure

- 1. Log on to the host on which the primary application server instance is running as user <SAPSID>adm (instance user).
- 2. Unpack the Software Update Manager package (<archive>.SAR) with the following command:
 - for UNIX:

SAPCAR -xf <download directory>/<path>/<Archive>.SAR -R /usr/sap/<sid>

This command creates the directory SUM under the /usr/sap/<sid> directory. You can also specify a directory other than /usr/sap/<sid>. In the following, the directory /<path to SUM directory>/SUM is referred to as <update directory>.

i Note

The complete path to the SUM folder must not exceed 30 characters.

- 3. Start the Software Update Manager entering the following command:
 - for UNIX:

```
cd /usr/sap/<SID>/SUM
./STARTUP confighostagent <SID>
```

i Note

Always call the script with the root user.

Related Information

Using the Software Update Manager (SUM) 1.0 [page 33]

3.2.6.1.1.2 Starting the SL Common GUI of the Software Update Manager

Context

This section describes how you start the SL Common UI and the SUM back-end process.

Procedure

- 1. Open a web browser window.
- In the address bar, enter the following URL: https://<hostname>:1129/lmsl/sumjava/<SID>/ index.html.

Replace <hostname> with the name of the host on which the Software Update Manager is running.

${f i}$ Note

If the SSL is not configured, use http instead of https at the beginning of the URL, and use port 1128: http://<hostname>:1128/lmsl/sumjava/<SID>/index.html 3. In the dialog box that appears, enter the user name <**sid**>**adm** and the password.

Results

The SAP Host Agent starts the Software Update Manager, and the SL Common GUI of the Software Update Manager is displayed in the web browser.

Related Information

Using the Software Update Manager (SUM) 1.0 [page 33]

3.2.6.1.1.3 Deploying Using the Software Update Manager

Context

The Software Update Manager controls the entire procedure, from checking the system requirements and importing the necessary programs through stopping production operation until production operation is resumed. The procedure is divided up into a number of different roadmap steps. The roadmap steps are in turn divided into phases. Many phases require no user input - step through those by choosing *Next*. The successful completion of a phase is a precondition for the success of all subsequent phases.

i Note

User actions are also required when errors occur. If an error occurs, correct it and repeat the phase in which the error has occurred. Once the phase has been repeated successfully, you can continue with the update.

To logon to the Software Update Manager and deploy the SCA file(s), do the following:

Procedure

- 1. Enter the user name and the password for the AS Java administrator user with which you log in to the system.
- 2. In the *Specify Credentials* roadmap step, specify the password for the instance user (<sapsid>adm), and then choose *Next*.
- 3. In the Select Target roadmap step, specify the path to the SCA file in the Directory field, then choose Next.

- 4. In the *Confirm Target* roadmap step, enter the keyword that is specified in the current *Central Software Update Manager Note* (which you can find in the Software Update Manager upgrade guide or in SAP Support Portal). Confirm the selected target system version by choosing *Next*.
- 5. In the *Configuration* roadmap step, provide the password of the AS Java administrator before proceeding. In this step it is also possible to specify the composition of the target release system.
- 6. Step through the phases requiring no user input by choosing *Next* and complete the process. Upon completing the process successfully, the important statistics are collected in a comprehensive report.

Next Steps

Every time you have used SUM, you need to either delete the SUM folder or rename it and keep it (if you would like, but this is not necessary). Then you have to extract a new SUM folder from the SUM. SAR file.

Use SAPCAR.EXE to extract the SAR file. Do the following:

- 1. In the command prompt, change to the directory to which you have downloaded or copied the SUM archives (the directory of the SUM. SAR file).
- Start SAPCAR to extract the archive to the current directory. Enter
 <path to sapcar.exe>\sapcar.exe -xvf SUM.SAR
 and run the command line.
- 3. The SUM. SAR file should now be extracted and the new SUM folder created. You may now use SUM again.

Related Information

SAP Notes & SAP Knowledge Base Articles Using the Software Update Manager (SUM) 1.0 [page 33]

3.2.7 Updating the REST Interface Version 2

Context

To update an already deployed Identity Management REST Interface Version 2 component, proceed as follows:

i Note

The SCA file for the Identity Management REST Interface Version 2 must be on the same SP level as SAP Identity Management (and its User Interface). Updating the Identity Management REST Interface Version 2 to a new SP version requires update of the other component to the same SP version first.

Procedure

1. Update the Identity Management REST Interface Version 2 by deploying the new SCA file as described in *Deploying the REST Interface Version 2.*

It is not necessary to update the configuration after update of the REST Interface Version 2 component.

2. Make sure your Identity Management REST Interface Version 2 uses HTTPS communication.

As of SAP Identity Management 8.0 SP06 and higher, Identity Management REST Interface v2 requires HTTPS communication by default. If you have used Identity Management REST Interface v2 over HTTPS in version 8.0 SP05 or lower, you do not need to do anything.

If you have used Identity Management REST Interface v2 over HTTP in version 8.0 SP05 or lower, when updating to version 8.0 SP06 or higher, you will get the following error message: "For security reasons, SAP Identity Management requires HTTPS communication by default. In case you need HTTP, please contact your SAP Identity Management Administrator for assistance." You have the following options:

- (Required) To allow HTTPS communication For more information how to configure the Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) on your SAP NetWeaver AS Java, see Using the HTTP Security (Secure Sockets Layer/SSL)
- To allow HTTP communication For more information how to configure HTTP communication, see Configuring the Java System Properties [page 208]

Related Information

Deploying the REST Interface Version 2 [page 224]

3.2.7.1 Deploying the REST Interface Version 2

Prerequisites

Before you deploy the SAP Identity Management REST Interface Version 2, make sure that the following prerequisites are fulfilled:

- One of the following SAP NetWeaver versions must be installed and licensed:
 - SAP NetWeaver 7.3 SP09 or higher
 - SAP NetWeaver 7.3 including Enhancement Package 1 SP06 Patch 3 or higher
 - SAP NetWeaver 7.4 SP02 or higher
 - SAP NetWeaver 7.5 SP08 or higher
- SAP Identity Management Identity Center 8.0 or higher must be correctly installed and licensed.
- SAP Identity Management User Interface 8.0 or higher needs to be correctly installed and configured.

• You require the SAPCAR archiving tool to be able to unpack software component archives (*. SAR files).

Context

To deploy the REST Interface Version 2, proceed as follows:

Procedure

- 1. In the SAP Software Download Center, navigate to the area of SAP Identity Management 8.0 and download the installation kit for the REST component.
- 2. Unpack the installation kit using the following command:

SAPCAR -xvf <your-SAR-file>

i Note

Make sure that the SCA file for the REST Interface Version 2 has the same SP version as the SAP Identity Management and its User Interface. The SCA file name is IDMREST<IdM SP version>_<IdM Patch version>.sca. For example, for SAP Identity Management 8.0 SP00 (Patch 0), the file name is IDMREST00_0.sca.

3. Use Software Update Manager (SUM) to deploy the SCA file on your SAP NetWeaver AS for Java where the SAP Identity Management User Interface is deployed.

Related Information

SAP Software Download Center on SAP Support Portal

3.2.7.1.1 Using the Software Update Manager (SUM) 1.0

The Software Update Manager (SUM) is a multi-purpose tool that supports various processes, such as performing a release upgrade, installing enhancement packages, applying Support Package Stacks, installing add-ons, or updating single components on SAP NetWeaver.

Prerequisites

 Make sure that the latest version of Software Update Manager 1.0 is downloaded and available on your SAP NetWeaver AS for Java. Software Update Manager 1.0 is part of the Software Logistics Toolset delivery and available for download from SAP Software Download Center. You can download the SUM archive from the main Software Logistics Toolset page

at: https://support.sap.com/en/tools/software-logistics-tools.html

UPDATE MANAGER 1.0 > SUPPORT PACKAGE PATCHES > <your os>].

- You can access the SUM documentation from the main Software Logistics Toolset page at: https://support.sap.com/en/tools/software-logistics-tools.html Software Update Manager (SUM) scenarios
 Software Update/Upgrade with SUM 1.0 SP<Version> Guides for SUM 1.0 SP<Version> For SAP NetWeaver AS for Java, there are specific guides for the combinations of operating systems and databases.
- Before running and using the SUM 1.0, you have to complete all required preparation and planning actions in the SUM 1.0 user guide.
- Make sure that the SAP system and its database are started.
- On the host where you want to start the SL Common GUI of the Software Update Manager, Java 6 or higher has to be installed.
- SAP Host Agent has been configured on your system with the minimum version required for your scenario. For more information, see *Installing or Updating SAP Host Agent* in the *Update of SAP Systems Using Software Update Manager* guide that is relevant for your operating system and database.

Context

In the case of SAP Identity Management, you need SUM in the following processes:

• SAP Identity Management installation with SWPM

In this case, you need SUM to deploy AS Java Extensions (SCA files) on the SAP NetWeaver AS Java system as a prerequisite for the following two components:

SAP Identity Management User Interface for HTML5

For more information about the SCA files, see Prerequisites and Dependencies Between Deployable Components [page 28]

- SAP Identity Management manual update (that is, without using SWPM) In this case, you need SUM to deploy the new version of SAP Identity Management components that are deployed on SAP NetWeaver AS Java system:
 - SAP Identity Management Developer Studio Service

- SAP Identity Management User Interface
- SAP Identity Management REST Interface version 2
- SAP Identity Management User Interface for HTML5
- SAP Identity Management Portal Content
- Identity Federation

For more information about deploying a new version of SAP Identity Management components, see the topics under Updating SAP Identity Management Components [page 188] section.

To start and use the Software Update Manager 1.0, proceed as follows:

Procedure

- 1. Get the Software Update Manager running on the primary application server instance, as described in Running the Software Update Manager [page 34]
- 2. Start the SL Common GUI of the Software Update Manager, as described in Starting the SL Common GUI of the Software Update Manager [page 35].
- 3. Logon to the Software Update Manager and deploy the SCA file(s), as described in Deploying Using the Software Update Manager [page 36].

3.2.7.1.1.1 Running the Software Update Manager

Context

To run the Software Update Manager on the application server (primary application server instance), proceed as follows:

Procedure

- 1. Log on to the host on which the primary application server instance is running as user <SAPSID>adm (instance user).
- 2. Unpack the Software Update Manager package (<archive>.SAR) with the following command:
 - for UNIX:

SAPCAR -xf <download directory>/<path>/<Archive>.SAR -R /usr/sap/<sid>

This command creates the directory SUM under the /usr/sap/<sid> directory. You can also specify a directory other than /usr/sap/<sid>. In the following, the directory /<path to SUM directory>/SUM is referred to as <update directory>.

i Note

The complete path to the SUM folder must not exceed 30 characters.

- 3. Start the Software Update Manager entering the following command:
 - for UNIX:

```
cd /usr/sap/<SID>/SUM
./STARTUP confighostagent <SID>
```

i Note Always call the script with the root user.

Related Information

Using the Software Update Manager (SUM) 1.0 [page 33]

3.2.7.1.1.2 Starting the SL Common GUI of the Software Update Manager

Context

This section describes how you start the SL Common UI and the SUM back-end process.

Procedure

- 1. Open a web browser window.
- In the address bar, enter the following URL: https://<hostname>:1129/lmsl/sumjava/<SID>/ index.html.

Replace <hostname> with the name of the host on which the Software Update Manager is running.

i Note

If the SSL is not configured, use http instead of https at the beginning of the URL, and use port 1128: http://<hostname>:1128/lmsl/sumjava/<SID>/index.html

3. In the dialog box that appears, enter the user name **<sid>adm** and the password.

Results

The SAP Host Agent starts the Software Update Manager, and the SL Common GUI of the Software Update Manager is displayed in the web browser.

Related Information

Using the Software Update Manager (SUM) 1.0 [page 33]

3.2.7.1.1.3 Deploying Using the Software Update Manager

Context

The Software Update Manager controls the entire procedure, from checking the system requirements and importing the necessary programs through stopping production operation until production operation is resumed. The procedure is divided up into a number of different roadmap steps. The roadmap steps are in turn divided into phases. Many phases require no user input - step through those by choosing *Next*. The successful completion of a phase is a precondition for the success of all subsequent phases.

i Note

User actions are also required when errors occur. If an error occurs, correct it and repeat the phase in which the error has occurred. Once the phase has been repeated successfully, you can continue with the update.

To logon to the Software Update Manager and deploy the SCA file(s), do the following:

Procedure

- 1. Enter the user name and the password for the AS Java administrator user with which you log in to the system.
- 2. In the *Specify Credentials* roadmap step, specify the password for the instance user (<sapsid>adm), and then choose *Next*.
- 3. In the Select Target roadmap step, specify the path to the SCA file in the Directory field, then choose Next.
- 4. In the *Confirm Target* roadmap step, enter the keyword that is specified in the current *Central Software Update Manager Note* (which you can find in the Software Update Manager upgrade guide or in SAP Support Portal). Confirm the selected target system version by choosing *Next*.
- 5. In the *Configuration* roadmap step, provide the password of the AS Java administrator before proceeding. In this step it is also possible to specify the composition of the target release system.

6. Step through the phases requiring no user input by choosing *Next* and complete the process. Upon completing the process successfully, the important statistics are collected in a comprehensive report.

Next Steps

Every time you have used SUM, you need to either delete the SUM folder or rename it and keep it (if you would like, but this is not necessary). Then you have to extract a new SUM folder from the SUM. SAR file.

Use SAPCAR. EXE to extract the SAR file. Do the following:

- 1. In the command prompt, change to the directory to which you have downloaded or copied the SUM archives (the directory of the SUM. SAR file).
- Start SAPCAR to extract the archive to the current directory. Enter
 <path to sapcar.exe>\sapcar.exe -xvf SUM.SAR
 and run the command line.
- 3. The SUM. SAR file should now be extracted and the new SUM folder created. You may now use SUM again.

Related Information

SAP Notes & SAP Knowledge Base Articles Using the Software Update Manager (SUM) 1.0 [page 33]

3.2.8 Updating the Identity Management User Interface for HTML5

Context

To update an already deployed Identity Management User Interface for HTML5 component, proceed as follows:

i Note

The SCA file for the Identity Management User Interface for HTML5 must be on the same SP level as SAP Identity Management (and its User Interface) and SAP Identity Management REST Interface Version 2. Updating the Identity Management User Interface for HTML5 to a new SP version requires the upgrading of the other components to the same SP version first.

Procedure

1. If a newer version of the package containing the predefined forms for the Identity Management User Interface for HTML5 is available, import the package to the Identity Management Developer Studio and configure the solution as described in *Adding the Predefined Forms and Configuring the Solution* and its subsections.

i Note

Importing the newer version of the package will overwrite the contents of the existing package.

2. Update the Identity Management User Interface for HTML5 by deploying the new SCA file as described in *Deploying the Identity Management User Interface for HTML5*.

Related Information

Adding the Predefined Forms and Configuring the Solution [page 166] Deploying the Identity Management User Interface for HTML5 [page 231]

3.2.8.1 Deploying the Identity Management User Interface for HTML5

Context

To deploy the Identity Management User Interface for HTML5, proceed as follows:

Procedure

- 1. In the SAP Software Download Center, navigate to the area of SAP Identity Management 8.0 and download the installation kit for the the Identity Management User Interface for HTML5 component.
- 2. Unpack the installation kit using the following command:

SAPCAR -xvf <your-SAR-file>

i Note

Make sure that the SCA file for the Identity Management User Interface for HTML5 has the same SP version as the SAP Identity Management (and its user interface) and the SAP Identity Management REST Interface Version 2. The SCA file name is IDMUI5 <IdM SP version>_<IdM Patch

version>.sca. For example, for SAP Identity Management 8.0 SP00 (Patch 0), the file name is IDMUI500_0.sca.

3. Use the Software Update Manager (SUM) to deploy the Identity Management User Interface for HTML5 (the .sca file) on your SAP NetWeaver AS for Java where both the Identity Management REST Interface Version 2 and the Identity Management User Interface are deployed.

Related Information

SAP Software Download Center on SAP Support Portal

3.2.8.1.1 Using the Software Update Manager (SUM) 1.0

The Software Update Manager (SUM) is a multi-purpose tool that supports various processes, such as performing a release upgrade, installing enhancement packages, applying Support Package Stacks, installing add-ons, or updating single components on SAP NetWeaver.

Prerequisites

- Make sure that the latest version of Software Update Manager 1.0 is downloaded and available on your SAP NetWeaver AS for Java. Software Update Manager 1.0 is part of the Software Logistics Toolset delivery and available for download from SAP Software Download Center. You can download the SUM archive from the main Software Logistics Toolset page at: https://support.sap.com/en/tools/software-logistics-tools.html Download SUM SOFTWARE UPDATE MANAGER 1.0 SUPPORT PACKAGE PATCHES <your OS> .
- You can access the SUM documentation from the main Software Logistics Toolset page at: https://support.sap.com/en/tools/software-logistics-tools.html Software Update Manager (SUM) scenarios
 Software Update/Upgrade with SUM 1.0 SP<Version> Guides for SUM 1.0 SP<Version> For SAP NetWeaver AS for Java, there are specific guides for the combinations of operating systems and databases.
- Before running and using the SUM 1.0, you have to complete all required preparation and planning actions in the SUM 1.0 user guide.
- Make sure that the SAP system and its database are started.
- On the host where you want to start the SL Common GUI of the Software Update Manager, Java 6 or higher has to be installed.
- SAP Host Agent has been configured on your system with the minimum version required for your scenario. For more information, see *Installing or Updating SAP Host Agent* in the *Update of SAP Systems Using Software Update Manager* guide that is relevant for your operating system and database.

Context

In the case of SAP Identity Management, you need SUM in the following processes:

- SAP Identity Management installation with SWPM In this case, you need SUM to deploy AS Java Extensions (SCA files) on the SAP NetWeaver AS Java system as a prerequisite for the following two components:
 - SAP Identity Management User Interface for HTML5

For more information about the SCA files, see Prerequisites and Dependencies Between Deployable Components [page 28]

- SAP Identity Management manual update (that is, without using SWPM) In this case, you need SUM to deploy the new version of SAP Identity Management components that are deployed on SAP NetWeaver AS Java system:
 - SAP Identity Management Developer Studio Service
 - SAP Identity Management User Interface
 - SAP Identity Management REST Interface version 2
 - SAP Identity Management User Interface for HTML5
 - SAP Identity Management Portal Content
 - Identity Federation

For more information about deploying a new version of SAP Identity Management components, see the topics under Updating SAP Identity Management Components [page 188] section.

To start and use the Software Update Manager 1.0, proceed as follows:

Procedure

- 1. Get the Software Update Manager running on the primary application server instance, as described in Running the Software Update Manager [page 34]
- 2. Start the SL Common GUI of the Software Update Manager, as described in Starting the SL Common GUI of the Software Update Manager [page 35].
- 3. Logon to the Software Update Manager and deploy the SCA file(s), as described in Deploying Using the Software Update Manager [page 36].

3.2.8.1.1.1 Running the Software Update Manager

Context

To run the Software Update Manager on the application server (primary application server instance), proceed as follows:

Procedure

- 1. Log on to the host on which the primary application server instance is running as user <SAPSID>adm (instance user).
- 2. Unpack the Software Update Manager package (<archive>.SAR) with the following command:
 - for UNIX:

SAPCAR -xf <download directory>/<path>/<Archive>.SAR -R /usr/sap/<sid>

This command creates the directory SUM under the /usr/sap/<sid> directory. You can also specify a directory other than /usr/sap/<sid>. In the following, the directory /<path to SUM directory>/SUM is referred to as <update directory>.

${f i}$ Note

The complete path to the SUM folder must not exceed 30 characters.

- 3. Start the Software Update Manager entering the following command:
 - for UNIX:

```
cd /usr/sap/<SID>/SUM
./STARTUP confighostagent <SID>
```

i Note

Always call the script with the root user.

Related Information

Using the Software Update Manager (SUM) 1.0 [page 33]

3.2.8.1.1.2 Starting the SL Common GUI of the Software Update Manager

Context

This section describes how you start the SL Common UI and the SUM back-end process.

Procedure

- 1. Open a web browser window.
- In the address bar, enter the following URL: https://<hostname>:1129/lmsl/sumjava/<SID>/ index.html.

Replace <hostname> with the name of the host on which the Software Update Manager is running.

i Note

If the SSL is not configured, use http instead of https at the beginning of the URL, and use port 1128: http://<hostname>:1128/lms1/sumjava/<SID>/index.html

3. In the dialog box that appears, enter the user name **<sid>adm** and the password.

Results

The SAP Host Agent starts the Software Update Manager, and the SL Common GUI of the Software Update Manager is displayed in the web browser.

Related Information

Using the Software Update Manager (SUM) 1.0 [page 33]

3.2.8.1.1.3 Deploying Using the Software Update Manager

Context

The Software Update Manager controls the entire procedure, from checking the system requirements and importing the necessary programs through stopping production operation until production operation is resumed. The procedure is divided up into a number of different roadmap steps. The roadmap steps are in turn divided into phases. Many phases require no user input - step through those by choosing *Next*. The successful completion of a phase is a precondition for the success of all subsequent phases.

i Note

User actions are also required when errors occur. If an error occurs, correct it and repeat the phase in which the error has occurred. Once the phase has been repeated successfully, you can continue with the update.

To logon to the Software Update Manager and deploy the SCA file(s), do the following:

Procedure

- 1. Enter the user name and the password for the AS Java administrator user with which you log in to the system.
- 2. In the *Specify Credentials* roadmap step, specify the password for the instance user (<sapsid>adm), and then choose *Next*.
- 3. In the Select Target roadmap step, specify the path to the SCA file in the Directory field, then choose Next.
- 4. In the *Confirm Target* roadmap step, enter the keyword that is specified in the current *Central Software Update Manager Note* (which you can find in the Software Update Manager upgrade guide or in SAP Support Portal). Confirm the selected target system version by choosing *Next*.
- 5. In the *Configuration* roadmap step, provide the password of the AS Java administrator before proceeding. In this step it is also possible to specify the composition of the target release system.
- 6. Step through the phases requiring no user input by choosing *Next* and complete the process. Upon completing the process successfully, the important statistics are collected in a comprehensive report.

Next Steps

Every time you have used SUM, you need to either delete the SUM folder or rename it and keep it (if you would like, but this is not necessary). Then you have to extract a new SUM folder from the SUM. SAR file.

Use SAPCAR. EXE to extract the SAR file. Do the following:

1. In the command prompt, change to the directory to which you have downloaded or copied the SUM archives (the directory of the SUM. SAR file).

- Start SAPCAR to extract the archive to the current directory. Enter
 <path to sapcar.exe>\sapcar.exe -xvf SUM.SAR
 and run the command line.
- 3. The SUM. SAR file should now be extracted and the new SUM folder created. You may now use SUM again.

Related Information

SAP Notes & SAP Knowledge Base Articles Using the Software Update Manager (SUM) 1.0 [page 33]

3.2.9 Updating IDM Connector for UWL

To update an already deployed IDM Connector for UWL, download the updated SCA file (IDMPORTALCONT<version>.sca) from the SAP Support Portal and deploy the file as described in *Deploying IDM Connector for UWL*.

Related Information

Deploying IDM Connector for UWL [page 237]

3.2.9.1 Deploying IDM Connector for UWL

Prerequisites

You require the SAPCAR archiving tool to be able to unpack software component archives (*. SAR files).

Context

The IDM connector for UWL is provided with SAP Identity Management as a *. SAR file. You can find the component with the name IDMPORTALCONT<version>.sca in the installation directory along with the workflow UIs or they are available for download in the SAP Software Download Center on the SAP Support Portal.

The deployment procedure is the same as for other SCAs on the AS Java. For more information, see the deployment documentation on the SAP Help Portal regarding your release.

Procedure

- 1. In the SAP Software Download Center, navigate to the area of SAP Identity Management 8.0 and download the installation kit for the IDMPORTALCONT component.
- 2. Unpack the installation kit using the following command:

```
SAPCAR -xvf <your-SAR-file>
```

- 3. Deploy the archive on the AS Java where the SAP Identity Management workflow UIs are running.
- 4. If the portal is running on a remote system, deploy both the SAP Identity Management workflow UIs (IDMIC<version>.sca) and the IDM connector for UWL (IDMPORTALCONT<version>.sca) on the portal system.

Related Information

Installation and Upgrades A-Z Index N SAP NW IDENTITY MANAGEMENT
 Release 7.1
 Release 7.2
 Release 7.3
 UWL Integration Configuration Guide

3.2.10 Downloading and Installing the Federation Software

Context

As of SAP Single Sign-On 2.0 and SAP Identity Management 7.2, the federation software component archive (SCA) includes the identity provider and the security token service software.

To download the federation software component archive, proceed as follows:

Procedure

1. Go to the SAP Software Download Center at https://support.sap.com/swdc/.

- 2. In the navigation pane, choose SAP Software Download Center Support Packages and Patches.
- 3. In the A-Z Index, navigate to the S section.
- 4. Navigate to the following product: SAP SINGLE SIGN ON SAP SINGLE SIGN ON 3.0 Comprised Software Component Versions IDM FEDERATION 7.2
- 5. Download IDMFEDERATION<Version>.SCA.
- Deploy the SCA to the AS Java.
 You can use the *Deployment Job* view of the SAP NetWeaver Developer Studio.

Related Information

SAP Single Sign-On

SAP Identity Management 8.0

Prerequisites

As of SAP Identity Management 8.0 SP04 and higher, the federation software is delivered as * . SAR file.

If you are running SAP Identity Management 8.0 SPO4 or higher, you require the SAPCAR archiving tool to be able to unpack software component archives (*.SAR files).

Procedure

- 1. Go to the SAP Software Download Center at https://support.sap.com/swdc/
- 2. In the navigation pane, choose SAP Software Download Center Software Downloads Support Packages and Patches .
- 3. In the A-Z Index, navigate to the *N* section.
- 4. Navigate to the following product: SAP NW IDENTITY MANAGEMENT SAP IDENTITY MANAGEMENT
 8.0 Comprised Software Component Versions IDM FEDERATION 7.2
- 5. Depending on your SAP Identity Management 8.0 SP release, download the following:
 - For version 8.0 SPO3 or lower: IDMFEDERATION<Version>.SCA
 - For version 8.0 SPO4 or higher: IDMFEDERATION<Version>.SAR
- 6. For version 8.0 SP04 or higher, unpack the installation kit using the following command:

```
SAPCAR -xvf <your-SAR-file>
```

7. Deploy the IDMFEDERATION<Version>.SCA to the AS Java.

You can use the *Deployment Job* view of the SAP NetWeaver Developer Studio.

Important Disclaimers and Legal Information

Hyperlinks

Some links are classified by an icon and/or a mouseover text. These links provide additional information. About the icons:

- Links with the icon P : You are entering a Web site that is not hosted by SAP. By using such links, you agree (unless expressly stated otherwise in your agreements with SAP) to this:
 - The content of the linked-to site is not SAP documentation. You may not infer any product claims against SAP based on this information.
 - SAP does not agree or disagree with the content on the linked-to site, nor does SAP warrant the availability and correctness. SAP shall not be liable for any
 damages caused by the use of such content unless damages have been caused by SAP's gross negligence or willful misconduct.
- Links with the icon normalized are entering an SAP-hosted Web site. By using
 such links, you agree that (unless expressly stated otherwise in your agreements with SAP) you may not infer any product claims against SAP based on this
 information.

Videos Hosted on External Platforms

Some videos may point to third-party video hosting platforms. SAP cannot guarantee the future availability of videos stored on these platforms. Furthermore, any advertisements or other content hosted on these platforms (for example, suggested videos or by navigating to other videos hosted on the same site), are not within the control or responsibility of SAP.

Beta and Other Experimental Features

Experimental features are not part of the officially delivered scope that SAP guarantees for future releases. This means that experimental features may be changed by SAP at any time for any reason without notice. Experimental features are not for productive use. You may not demonstrate, test, examine, evaluate or otherwise use the experimental features in a live operating environment or with data that has not been sufficiently backed up. The purpose of experimental features is to get feedback early on, allowing customers and partners to influence the future product accordingly. By providing your feedback (e.g. in the SAP Community), you accept that intellectual property rights of the contributions or derivative works shall remain the exclusive property of SAP.

Example Code

Any software coding and/or code snippets are examples. They are not for productive use. The example code is only intended to better explain and visualize the syntax and phrasing rules. SAP does not warrant the correctness and completeness of the example code. SAP shall not be liable for errors or damages caused by the use of example code unless damages have been caused by SAP's gross negligence or willful misconduct.

Bias-Free Language

SAP supports a culture of diversity and inclusion. Whenever possible, we use unbiased language in our documentation to refer to people of all cultures, ethnicities, genders, and abilities.

© 2023 SAP SE or an SAP affiliate company. All rights reserved.

No part of this publication may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or for any purpose without the express permission of SAP SE or an SAP affiliate company. The information contained herein may be changed without prior notice.

Some software products marketed by SAP SE and its distributors contain proprietary software components of other software vendors. National product specifications may vary.

These materials are provided by SAP SE or an SAP affiliate company for informational purposes only, without representation or warranty of any kind, and SAP or its affiliated companies shall not be liable for errors or omissions with respect to the materials. The only warranties for SAP or SAP affiliate company products and services are those that are set forth in the express warranty statements accompanying such products and services, if any. Nothing herein should be construed as constituting an additional warranty.

SAP and other SAP products and services mentioned herein as well as their respective logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of SAP SE (or an SAP affiliate company) in Germany and other countries. All other product and service names mentioned are the trademarks of their respective companies.

Please see https://www.sap.com/about/legal/trademark.html for additional trademark information and notices.

